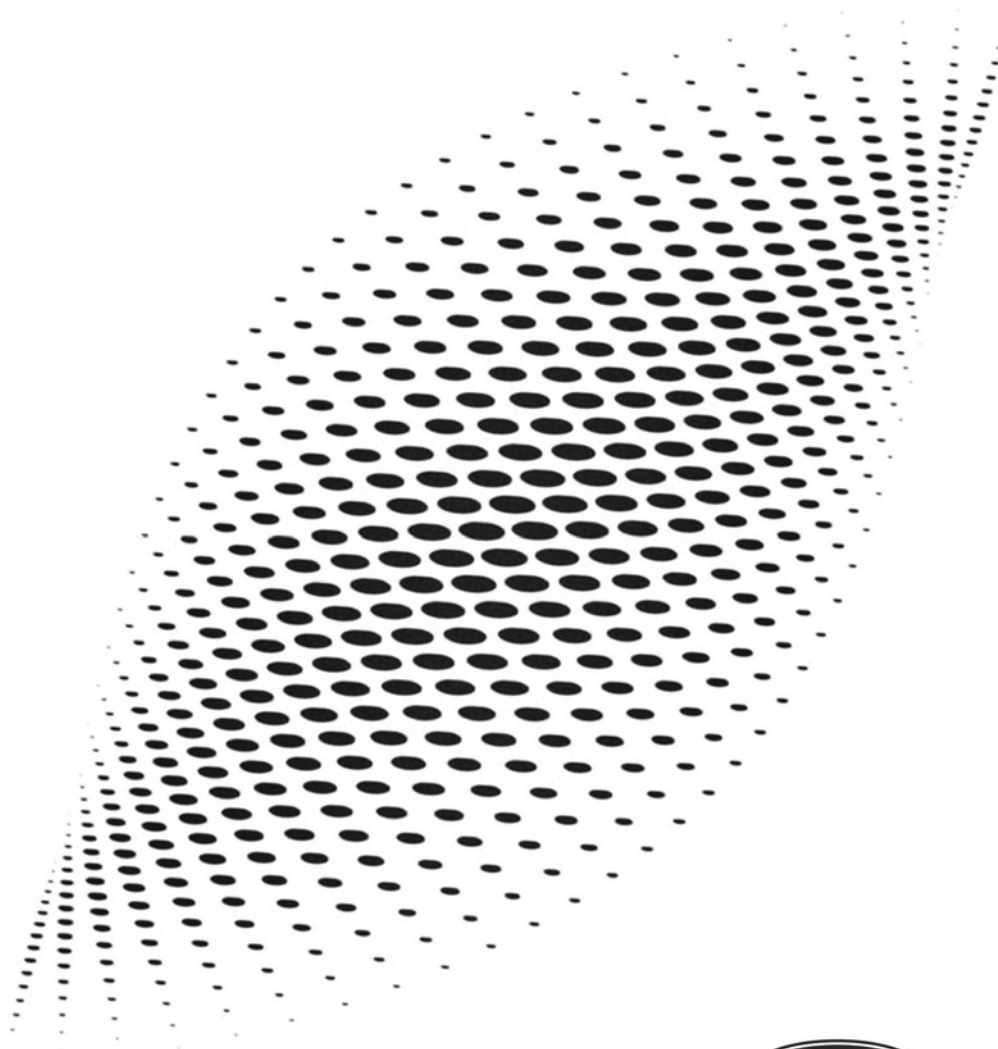


# FORD **MAVERICK** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2024

All rights reserved.

Part Number: -202407-20240712140147

## California Proposition 65



**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.  
**Wash your hands after handling.**





# Table of Contents

---

## Contacting Us

Contacting Us .....	15
---------------------	----

## Introduction

About This Publication .....	17
Using This Publication .....	18

## Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle .....	19
Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster .....	21

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy .....	25
Service Data .....	26
Event Data .....	26
Settings Data .....	27
Connected Vehicle Data .....	27
Mobile Device Data .....	28
Emergency Call System Data .....	28

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	29
----------------------------------	----

## Visual Search

Interior Overview .....	30
Exterior Overview .....	31

## Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions .....	32
Child Restraint Anchor Points .....	33
Child Restraints .....	34
Installing Child Restraints .....	35
Booster Seats .....	40
Child Safety Locks .....	42

## Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions .....	43
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts .....	44

Sensitive Locking Mode .....	45
Automatic Locking Mode .....	45
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy .....	46
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height .....	46
Seatbelt Reminder .....	47
Checking the Seatbelts .....	48
Seatbelt Extensions .....	49

## Personal Safety System™

What Is the Personal Safety System .....	50
How Does the Personal Safety System Work .....	50
Personal Safety System Components .....	50

## Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work .....	51
How Do the Side Airbags Work .....	51
How Do the Knee Airbags Work .....	52
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work .....	52
Airbag Precautions .....	53
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats .....	54
Children and Airbags .....	54
Front Passenger Sensing System .....	55
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator .....	58
Disposing of Airbags .....	59

## 911 Assist

What Is 911 Assist .....	60
How Does 911 Assist Work .....	60
Emergency Call Requirements .....	60
Emergency Call Limitations .....	61

## Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations .....	62
Using the Remote Control .....	62
Opening and Closing the Flip Key .....	63

# Table of Contents

---

Removing the Key Blade .....	63
Sounding the Panic Alarm .....	63
Locating Your Vehicle .....	63
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Flip Key .....	64
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	65
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	66
Programming the Remote Control .....	67
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting .....	67

## Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle .....	68
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle .....	68
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor .....	69
Autounlock .....	69
Autolock .....	69
Mislock .....	69
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings .....	70
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting .....	70

## Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry .....	72
Keyless Entry Limitations .....	72
Keyless Entry Settings .....	72
Using Keyless Entry .....	72
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting .....	73

## Tailgate

Tailgate Precautions .....	74
Opening the Tailgate .....	74
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate .....	75
Removing and Installing the Tailgate .....	75

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	77
Anti-Theft Alarm System .....	77
Security – Troubleshooting .....	78

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	80
Horn .....	80
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off .....	80

## Wipers and Washers

Wipers .....	81
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	81
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .....	81
Washers .....	82
Wipers and Washers Videos .....	84
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting .....	84

## Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control .....	85
Headlamps .....	85
Headlamps – Troubleshooting .....	86
Autolamps .....	86
Exterior Lamps .....	87
Automatic High Beam Control .....	89
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting .....	91

## Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off .....	92
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off .....	92
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off .....	92
Interior Lamp Function .....	92
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness .....	92
Ambient Lighting .....	93

# Table of Contents

---

Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting .....	93	Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu .....	105
<b>Windows</b>		Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display .....	106
Opening and Closing the Windows .....	94	Fuel Economy Display - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	106
Window Bounce-Back .....	94	Fuel Economy Display - Gasoline .....	106
Locking the Rear Window Controls .....	95	EV Coach - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	106
Opening and Closing the Sliding Windows .....	95	Brake Coach - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	107
<b>Interior Mirror</b>		Trip Summary - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	107
Interior Mirror Precautions .....	97	<b>Trip Computer</b>	
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror .....	97	Accessing the Trip Computer .....	108
<b>Exterior Mirrors</b>		Resetting the Trip Computer .....	108
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors .....	98	<b>Remote Start</b>	
Folding the Exterior Mirrors .....	99	Using Remote Start .....	109
<b>Glass Roof</b>		Remote Start Settings .....	109
Opening and Closing the Sunshade .....	100	<b>Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)</b>	
Opening and Closing the Glass Roof .....	100	Identifying the Climate Control Unit .....	110
Venting the Glass Roof .....	101	Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	110
Glass Roof Bounce-Back .....	101	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	110
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>		Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	110
Instrument Cluster Overview - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	102	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	110
Instrument Cluster Overview - Gasoline .....	102	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	110
Tachometer - Gasoline .....	103	Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	110
Power Gauge - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	104	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....	111
Speedometer .....	104	Setting the Temperature .....	111
Fuel Gauge .....	104	Directing the Flow of Air .....	111
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge .....	104	Auto Mode .....	111
<b>Instrument Cluster Display</b>			
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls .....	105		

# Table of Contents

---

Climate Control Hints .....	112
Air Conditioning System Refrigerant .....	113

## **Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)**

Identifying the Climate Control Unit .....	114
Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	114
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	114
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	114
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	114
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	114
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	114
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....	115
Setting the Temperature .....	115
Directing the Flow of Air .....	115
Climate Control Hints .....	115

## **Interior Air Quality**

What Is the Cabin Air Filter .....	117
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter .....	117

## **Front Seats**

Front Seat Precautions .....	118
Sitting in the Correct Position .....	118
Manual Seats .....	119
Power Seats .....	121
Heated Seats .....	123

## **Rear Seats**

Manual Seats .....	124
--------------------	-----

## **Rear Occupant Alert System**

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	127
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	127
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	127
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	127
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings .....	128
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	128
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	129

## **USB Ports**

Locating the USB Ports .....	130
Playing Media Using the USB Port .....	130
Charging a Device .....	130

## **Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 120V Power Outlet**

What Is the Power Outlet .....	132
Power Outlet Precautions .....	132
Power Outlet Limitations .....	132
Locating the Power Outlets .....	132
Power Outlet Indicators .....	132

## **Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet**

What Is the Power Outlet .....	134
Power Outlet Precautions .....	134
Locating the Power Outlets .....	134

## **Wireless Accessory Charger**

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	135
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions .....	135

# Table of Contents

---

Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	135	Restarting the Engine .....	153
Charging a Wireless Device .....	135	Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	153
<b>Storage</b>		Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	154
Cup Holders .....	137	<b>Fuel and Refueling</b>	
Glove Compartment .....	137	Fuel and Refueling Precautions .....	156
Center Console .....	137	Fuel Quality .....	156
Under Seat Storage .....	138	Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel .....	157
Glasses Holder .....	138	Running Out of Fuel .....	157
Pickup Bed Storage .....	138	Refueling .....	159
<b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b>		Fuel Tank Capacity - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	162
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions .....	140	Fuel Tank Capacity - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	163
Ignition Switch - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start .....	140	Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting .....	163
Push Button Ignition Switch - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	141	<b>Catalytic Converter</b>	
Starting the Engine .....	141	What Is the Catalytic Converter .....	166
Engine Block Heater .....	143	Catalytic Converter Precautions .....	166
Stopping the Engine .....	144	Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting .....	166
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	145	<b>High Voltage Battery - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)</b>	
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	146	What Is the High Voltage Battery .....	167
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting .....	147	High Voltage Battery Precautions .....	167
<b>Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)</b>		Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery .....	167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information .....	151	High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting .....	167
<b>Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline</b>		<b>Automatic Transmission</b>	
What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	153	Automatic Transmission Positions .....	168
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	153	Manually Shifting Gears .....	170
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	153	Temporary Neutral Mode .....	171
Stopping the Engine .....	153	Automatic Return to Park (P) .....	171
		Grade Assist - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	172
		Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) .....	172

# Table of Contents

---

Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings .....	173
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification .....	173
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages .....	174

## All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work - Excluding: FX4 Off Road/Tremor .....	175
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work - FX4 Off Road/Tremor .....	175
All-Wheel Drive Precautions .....	176
All-Wheel Drive Limitations .....	176
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting .....	177

## Brakes

Brake Precautions .....	178
Anti-Lock Braking System .....	178
Brake Over Accelerator .....	178
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir .....	178
Checking the Brake Fluid .....	178
Brake Fluid Specification .....	179
Brakes – Troubleshooting .....	180

## Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake .....	182
Applying the Electric Parking Brake .....	182
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency .....	182
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	182
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	183
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning .....	183
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge .....	183
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....	183

## Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist .....	185
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work .....	185
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions .....	185
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off .....	186
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist .....	186
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators .....	186
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting .....	187

## Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist .....	189
How Does Hill Start Assist Work .....	189
Hill Start Assist Precautions .....	189
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting .....	189

## Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work .....	190
Switching Auto Hold On and Off .....	190
Using Auto Hold .....	190
Auto Hold Indicators .....	190

## Traction Control

What Is Traction Control .....	192
How Does Traction Control Work .....	192
Switching Traction Control On and Off .....	192
Traction Control – Troubleshooting .....	192

## Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work .....	194
Switching Stability Control On and Off .....	195
Stability Control Indicator .....	196
Stability Control – Troubleshooting .....	197

## Trail Control

What Is Trail Control .....	198
-----------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

---

Trail Control Limitations .....	198
Switching Trail Control On and Off .....	198
Setting the Trail Control Speed .....	198
Canceling the Set Speed .....	198
Trail Control Indicators .....	199
Trail One Pedal Drive .....	199
Trail One Pedal Drive – Troubleshooting .....	200
Trail Control – Troubleshooting .....	201

## Hill Descent Control

What Is Hill Descent Control .....	202
How Does Hill Descent Control Work .....	202
Hill Descent Control Precautions .....	202
Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off .....	202
Setting the Hill Descent Speed .....	202
Hill Descent Control Indicator .....	202
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting .....	203

## Steering

Electric Power Steering .....	204
Steering – Troubleshooting .....	205

## Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions .....	206
Switching Parking Aid On and Off .....	206
Rear Parking Aid .....	207
Front Parking Aid .....	207
Parking Aid Indicators .....	209
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting .....	210

## Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera .....	211
Rear View Camera Precautions .....	211
Locating the Rear View Camera .....	211
Rear View Camera Guide Lines .....	211
Rear View Camera Settings .....	212

## 360 Degree Camera

What Is the 360 Degree Camera .....	213
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work .....	213
360 Degree Camera Precautions .....	213
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras .....	213
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines .....	214
360 Degree Camera Settings .....	214

## Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control .....	216
Switching Cruise Control On and Off .....	216
Setting the Cruise Control Speed .....	216
Canceling the Set Speed .....	217
Resuming the Set Speed .....	217
Cruise Control Indicators .....	217

## Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work .....	218
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions .....	218
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations .....	219
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off .....	220
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation .....	221
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed .....	221
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap .....	222
Canceling the Set Speed .....	223
Resuming the Set Speed .....	223
Overriding the Set Speed .....	224
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators .....	224
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control .....	224
Lane Centering .....	224
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting .....	227
Predictive Speed Assist .....	228

# Table of Contents

Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting .....	230
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting .....	230

## Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control .....	232
How Does Drive Mode Control Work .....	232
Selecting a Drive Mode .....	232
Drive Modes .....	232
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting .....	234

## Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System .....	236
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work .....	236
Lane Keeping System Precautions .....	236
Lane Keeping System Limitations .....	236
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off .....	237
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode .....	237
Lane Keeping System Settings .....	238
Alert Mode .....	238
Aid Mode .....	238
Alert and Aid Mode .....	238
Lane Keeping System Indicators .....	239
Blind Spot Assist .....	240
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage .....	240
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting .....	243

## Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System .....	245
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work .....	245

Blind Spot Information System Precautions .....	245
Blind Spot Information System Limitations .....	245
Blind Spot Information System Requirements .....	245
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off .....	245
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors .....	246
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage .....	246
Blind Spot Information System Indicators .....	248
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting .....	248

## Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert .....	250
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work .....	250
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions .....	250
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations .....	251
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off .....	252
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors .....	252
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators .....	252
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting .....	253

## Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist .....	254
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work .....	254
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions .....	254
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations .....	255
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off .....	257
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors .....	257
Forward Collision Warning .....	258
Automatic Emergency Braking .....	258
Evasive Steering Assist .....	258



# Table of Contents

---

Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting .....	259	Tailgate Anchor Points .....	272
		Pickup Bed Slots .....	273
<b>Speed Sign Recognition</b>		<b>Connecting a Trailer</b>	
What Is Speed Sign Recognition .....	261	Connecting a Trailer Precautions .....	274
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work .....	261	Connecting a Trailer .....	274
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions .....	261	Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting .....	276
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations .....	261		
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators .....	262	<b>Towing a Trailer</b>	
Speed Sign Recognition Settings .....	262	Towing a Trailer Precautions .....	277
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting .....	262	Trailer Brake Precautions .....	277
		Towing a Trailer Limitations .....	278
		Loading Your Trailer .....	278
		Trailer Towing Hints .....	278
		Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft .....	279
		Towing Weights and Dimensions .....	280
<b>Driver Alert</b>			
What Is Driver Alert .....	264	<b>Integrated Trailer Brake Controller</b>	
How Does Driver Alert Work .....	264	What Is the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller .....	282
Driver Alert Precautions .....	264	Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Precautions .....	282
Driver Alert Limitations .....	264	Using the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller .....	282
Switching Driver Alert On and Off .....	265	Adjusting the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Mode .....	284
Driver Alert Indicators .....	265	Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting .....	285
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting .....	265		
		<b>Trailer Sway Control</b>	
<b>Load Carrying</b>		How Does Trailer Sway Control Work .....	287
Load Carrying Precautions .....	266	Trailer Sway Control Precautions .....	287
Using a Slide-In Camper .....	267	Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off .....	287
Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels .....	267		
What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating .....	267	<b>Trailer Hitching Assistance</b>	
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating .....	267	What Is Trailer Hitching Assistance .....	288
What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating .....	267		
Calculating Payload .....	268		
Calculating the Load Limit .....	268		
<b>Pickup Bed</b>			
Pickup Bed Precautions .....	271		
Pickup Bed Anchor Points .....	271		

# Table of Contents

How Does Trailer Hitching Assistance Work .....	288
Trailer Hitching Assistance Precautions .....	288
Trailer Hitching Assistance Limitations .....	289
Switching Trailer Hitching Assistance On and Off .....	289
Using Trailer Hitching Assistance .....	289
Trailer Hitching Assistance Indicators .....	290

## Trailer Backup Assistance

What is Trailer Backup Assistance .....	291
How Does Trailer Backup Assistance Work .....	291
Trailer Backup Assistance Precautions .....	291
Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for a Conventional Trailer .....	291
Switching Trailer Backup Assistance On and Off .....	294
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Controller .....	294
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Views .....	295
Trailer Backup Assistance – Troubleshooting .....	297

## Trailer Reverse Guidance

What Is Trailer Reverse Guidance .....	301
How Does Trailer Reverse Guidance Work .....	301
Trailer Reverse Guidance Precautions .....	301
Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a Conventional Trailer .....	301
Switching Trailer Reverse Guidance On and Off .....	304
Using Trailer Reverse Guidance Views .....	304
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Troubleshooting .....	306

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In .....	310
Driving Economically .....	310
Driving in Cold Weather .....	310
Driving Through Mud and Water .....	311
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain .....	311
Driving In Sand .....	311
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	312
Floor Mats .....	312

## Crash and Breakdown Information

Roadside Assistance .....	314
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions .....	315
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off .....	316
Jump Starting the Vehicle .....	316
Post-Crash Alert System .....	320
Post Impact Braking .....	320
Automatic Crash Shutoff .....	321
Recovery Towing .....	321
Transporting the Vehicle .....	323
Fail-Safe Cooling .....	323

## Towing Your Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions - FWD .....	325
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD .....	325
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD .....	325
Emergency Towing .....	326
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	327

## Towing Your Vehicle - Gasoline

Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD .....	328
--	-----

# Table of Contents

Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD .....	328	Cleaning the Interior .....	371
Emergency Towing .....	328	Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	373
		Waxing Your Vehicle .....	373
<b>Fuses</b>		<b>Storing Your Vehicle</b>	
Fuse Precautions .....	329	Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage .....	374
Under Hood Fuse Box .....	329	Removing Your Vehicle From Storage .....	375
Body Control Module Fuse Box .....	335		
Identifying Fuse Types .....	337	<b>Wheel and Tire Information</b>	
Fuses – Troubleshooting .....	337	Locating the Tire label .....	376
<b>Maintenance</b>		Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades .....	376
Maintenance Precautions .....	338	Information on the Tire Sidewall .....	377
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	338	Glossary of Tire Terminology .....	382
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	340	Tire Replacement Requirements .....	383
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	341	Using Snow Chains .....	385
Engine Oil .....	342		
Engine Air Filter .....	346	<b>Tire Care</b>	
Coolant .....	349	Checking the Tire Pressures .....	387
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	354	Inflating the Tires .....	387
12V Battery .....	354	Inspecting the Tire for Wear .....	388
Adjusting the Headlamps .....	357	Inspecting the Tire for Damage .....	389
Exterior Bulbs .....	359	Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems .....	393
Interior Bulbs .....	363	Tire Rotation .....	393
Maintenance Videos .....	363		
<b>Vehicle Specifications</b>		<b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b>	
Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	364	What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	395
Engine Specifications - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	365	Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview .....	395
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	366	Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....	396
Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	366	Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....	396
		Viewing the Tire Pressures .....	397
<b>Vehicle Care</b>		Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....	397
Cleaning Products .....	368		
Cleaning the Exterior .....	369		

# Table of Contents

---

## Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire .....	399
Wheel Nuts .....	407

## Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number .....	408
-------------------------------------	-----

## Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	409
Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	409
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	409
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	409
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	409
Connected Vehicle Settings .....	410
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	410

## Vehicle Hotspot

Setting Up a Vehicle Hotspot .....	412
Vehicle Hotspot Settings .....	412
Vehicle Hotspot – Troubleshooting .....	413

## Audio System

Audio System Precautions .....	414
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off .....	414
Selecting the Audio Source .....	414
Media Control Buttons .....	414
Adjusting the Volume .....	414
Setting a Memory Preset .....	415
Muting the Audio .....	415
Adjusting the Sound Settings .....	415
Setting the Clock and Date .....	415
AM/FM Radio .....	415
Switching the Display On and Off .....	416
Digital Radio .....	416
Satellite Radio .....	417
Audio System – Troubleshooting .....	420

## Center Display

Center Display Overview .....	424
Home Screen .....	424
Status Bar .....	424
Information On Demand Screen .....	426
Settings .....	426
Driver Assistance Menu .....	426
Rebooting the Center Display .....	426

## Voice Interaction

Ford Assistant .....	427
----------------------	-----

## Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In .....	429
Alexa Built-In Requirements .....	429
Signing In to Your Account .....	429
Using Alexa Built-In .....	429
Alexa Built-In Settings .....	429

## Phone

Phone Precautions .....	431
Connecting Your Phone .....	431
Phone Menu .....	431
Making and Receiving a Phone Call .....	433
Sending and Receiving a Text Message .....	434
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off .....	435
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device .....	435
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off .....	435
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off .....	436

## Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device .....	437
Playing Media Using Bluetooth® .....	437

## Navigation

Connected Navigation .....	438
----------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

---

Accessing Navigation .....	438	Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	509
Navigation Map Updates .....	438	Mobile Communications Equipment .....	510
Adjusting the Map .....	438	Federal Highway Administration Regulation .....	510
Live Traffic .....	438	End User License Agreement .....	511
Setting a Destination .....	438	Emission Law .....	536
Waypoints .....	439	Export Unique Options .....	537
Route Guidance .....	439	Warranty Information .....	537
<b>Vehicle Software Updates</b>			
Vehicle Software Updates .....	441	<b>Appendices</b>	
Software Update Settings .....	441	Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	540
Software Update Indicators .....	442		
<b>Vehicle System Reset</b>			
Performing a System Reset .....	443		
<b>Accessories</b>			
Accessories .....	444		
<b>Ford Protect</b>			
What Is Ford Protect .....	445		
<b>Scheduled Maintenance</b>			
Scheduled Maintenance .....	447		
General Maintenance Information .....	449		
<b>Customer Information</b>			
Rollover Warning .....	454		
The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program .....	454		
The Mediation and Arbitration Program .....	455		
Reporting Safety Defects in the United States .....	455		
Reporting Safety Defects in Canada .....	456		
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment .....	457		
Radio Frequency Certification Labels .....	457		
Perchlorate .....	509		



# Contacting Us

---

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship center.

## United States

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
PO Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone  
service provider)  
[www.ford.com/help/contact/](http://www.ford.com/help/contact/)

## Ford Credit - US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For assistance call 1-800-727-7000, or for more information about Ford Credit and access to an account manager, visit [www.ford.com/finance](http://www.ford.com/finance).

## Canada

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4  
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone  
service provider)  
[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

## Australia

Ford Motor Company of Australia Pty Ltd.  
Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Mail Bag 5  
Campbellfield, Victoria, 3061  
Telephone: (13 FORD) 13 3673  
E-mail: [foacust1@ford.com](mailto:foacust1@ford.com)

## New Zealand

Ford Motor Company  
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Bag 76912  
Manukau City 2241  
Telephone: 0800 367 369 (FORDNZ)  
E-mail: [fnzcust@ford.com](mailto:fnzcust@ford.com)

## China - Imported Vehicle

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 400-690-1886  
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

## China - Chang'An Ford

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 800-810-8168  
Mobile: 400-887-7766  
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

## Asia Pacific Direct Markets (APDM)

E-mail: [apemcrc@ford.com](mailto:apemcrc@ford.com)

## Caribbean, Central America and Israel

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
Telephone: (800) 841-3673  
E-mail: [atnclien@ford.com](mailto:atnclien@ford.com)

## U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Telephone: (800) 841-3673  
E-mail: [atnclien@ford.com](mailto:atnclien@ford.com)

# Contacting Us

---

## Argentina

Telephone: 0800-888-3673

## Brazil

Website: [www.ford.com.br](http://www.ford.com.br)  
Telephone: 0800-703-3673  
E-mail: [central@ford.com](mailto:central@ford.com)

## North Africa

E-mail: [nafcrc@ford.com](mailto:nafcrc@ford.com)

## South Africa

Telephone: 0860011022  
Email: [fordcrc2@ford.com](mailto:fordcrc2@ford.com)

## Sub-Saharan Africa

E-mail: [ssacrc@ford.com](mailto:ssacrc@ford.com)

## Puerto Rico

Ford International Business Development,  
Inc.  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, PR 00922-1957  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
E-mail: [prcac@ford.com](mailto:prcac@ford.com)  
[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)

## Middle East

Ford Middle East Customer Relationship  
Center  
P.O. Box 21740  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: 80004441066  
Toll-free number for the Kingdom of Saudi  
Arabia: 8008443673  
Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi  
Arabia: 800850078  
Kuwait: 22280384  
Local telephone number for Kuwait: +965  
1 898900  
Fax: +971 4 3327266  
E-mail: [menacac@ford.com](mailto:menacac@ford.com)  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)

## South Korea

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: +82-02-1600-6003  
E-mail: [infokr1@ford.com](mailto:infokr1@ford.com)  
Emergency Dispatch Service call:  
080-300-3673

## Philippines

Telephone: 02-88669408  
Email: [emailus@ford.com](mailto:emailus@ford.com)

## Taiwan

Telephone: 0800-032100  
705 Zhonghua Rd., Sec. 1  
Zhongli District, Taoyuan, Taiwan, 32068

## Thailand

Telephone: 1383  
E-mail: [fordthai@ford.com](mailto:fordthai@ford.com)

## Vietnam

Telephone: 1800588888  
E-mail: [fordvn@ford.com](mailto:fordvn@ford.com)



# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford mobile app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

**Note:** Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

## Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

## Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at [OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com](mailto:OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com).

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

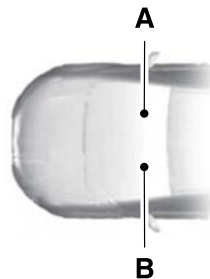
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

## Illustrations

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

## Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

# Introduction

---

## Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle. We recommend updating the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual when prompted using Over The Air updates.

## Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

## Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

## Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

### Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford mobile app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

**Note:** To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

**Note:** We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

### Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com) or see an authorized dealer.

In Europe, visit [www.z-order.de](http://www.z-order.de) or see an authorized dealer.

For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.







## USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

# Symbols Glossary

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

	Airbag		Child safety door lock or unlock
	Air conditioning system		Child seat lower anchor
	Air conditioning system lubricant type		Child seat tether anchor
	Anti-lock braking system		Cruise control
	Avoid smoking, flames or sparks		Do not open when hot
	Battery		Electric Parking brake
	Battery acid		Engine air filter
	Blower motor		Engine coolant
	Brake fluid - non petroleum based		Engine coolant temperature
	Brake system		Engine oil
	Brake system		Explosive gas
	Cabin air filter		Fan warning
	Check fuel cap		Fasten seatbelt
			Flammable
			Front fog lamps

# Symbols Glossary



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard flashers



Headlamp high beams



Headlamps on



Heated rear window



Hill descent control



Horn control



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low fuel level



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking lamps



Passenger airbag activated



Passenger airbag deactivated



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Requires registered technician



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



See Service Manual



Side airbag

# Symbols Glossary



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Stability control off



Trail control



Turn Signal



Windshield defrosting system



Windshield wiping system



Windshield wash and wipe

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Depending on your vehicle options, market, and instrument cluster type, not all symbols shown are available.

### Lighting and Signaling



High beams. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 85).



Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 90).



Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 87).



Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 87).



Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 85).



Front fog lamps. See **Using the Front Fog Lamps** (page 88).



Exterior bulb failure. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

### Brakes



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 180). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 183).



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 180). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 183).



Electric parking brake fault. See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 183).



Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Indicators** (page 178). See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 180).



Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 190).



Automatic brake hold off or unavailable. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 190).

### Visibility



Windshield washer fluid level. See **Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps** (page 84).

# Symbols Glossary

## Engine



Check engine. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 147).

See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 166). See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 353). See **Emission Law** (page 536).



Engine oil pressure. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps**

(page 147).



Engine coolant temperature. See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 166).

See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 353).



Auto Start/Stop. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 153).



Auto Start/Stop off or unavailable. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators**

(page 153).

## Fuel



Fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps** (page 163).

## Transmission



Non-emission powertrain fault. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps**

(page 147).



Shift up. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 170).



Shift down. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 170).

## Vehicle Handling



Selectable drive mode - normal. See **Normal** (page 233).



Selectable drive mode - Eco. See **Eco** (page 232). See **Eco** (page 233).



Selectable drive mode - sport. See **Sport** (page 234). See **Sport** (page 234).



Selectable drive mode - tow/haul. See **Tow/Haul** (page 234).



Selectable drive mode - slippery. See **Slippery** (page 233).



Selectable drive mode - Off-road. See **Off-Road** (page 233).



Selectable drive mode -lobo. See **Lobo** (page 233).



Differential lock - rear axle. See **How Does All-Wheel Drive Work** (page 175).



Four-wheel drive lock. See **How Does All-Wheel Drive Work** (page 175).



One-pedal drive. See **Trail One Pedal Drive Indicators** (page 200).

## Driver Assistance



Cruise control. See **Cruise Control Indicators** (page 217). See **Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control** (page 224).



Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 224).

# Symbols Glossary



Hill descent control. See **Hill Descent Control Indicator** (page 202).



Trail control. See **Trail Control Indicators** (page 199).



Lane keeping assist. See **Lane Keeping System Indicators** (page 239).



Lane centering assist. See **Lane Centering Indicators** (page 227).



Parking aid. See **Parking Aid Indicators** (page 209).

## Safety



Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Precautions** (page 43). See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 47).



Airbag. See **Seatbelt Precautions** (page 43). See **How Do the Knee Airbags Work** (page 52). See **How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work** (page 52). See **How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work** (page 55). See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 58).



Stability control system active or not available. See **Traction Control – Warning Lamps** (page 192). See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 196). See **Stability Control – Warning Lamps** (page 197).



Stability control system off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 192). See **Traction Control – Warning Lamps** (page 192). See **Stability Control – Warning Lamps** (page 197). See **Drive Mode Control – Warning Lamps** (page 234).



Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 395). See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps** (page 397).



Forward collision warning system. See **How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work** (page 254).



Forward collision warning system off or unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 259).



Blind spot information system off or unavailable. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 248).



Driver alert system off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 265).



Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 70).

## Security



Hood release/ajar. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 338).

## Electrical Systems



Battery charge level. See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 166).



Battery shutoff. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 167).



Propulsion battery temperature. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 167).

# Symbols Glossary

---



Hybrid/electric system failure. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 151).



Grade assist. See **Grade Assist** (page 172).



Limited performance mode. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 167).



Ready to drive. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 151).



High voltage hazard. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 167).



# Data Privacy



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Where equipped, SiriusXM with 360L could use the modem. To disable, turn off the SiriusXM with 360L or Vehicle Connectivity setting. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 409).

# Data Privacy

---

## SERVICE DATA

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, for example, your contact information, to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest

you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca), including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries.

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

# Data Privacy

---

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

## Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

## Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 409).*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

# Data Privacy

---

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system.

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 443).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

# Environment

---

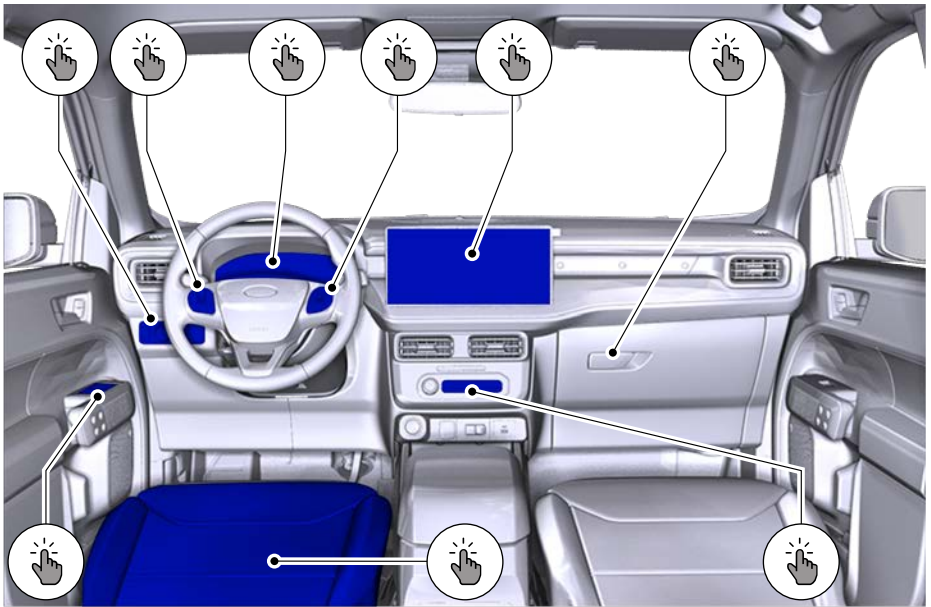
## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

# Visual Search

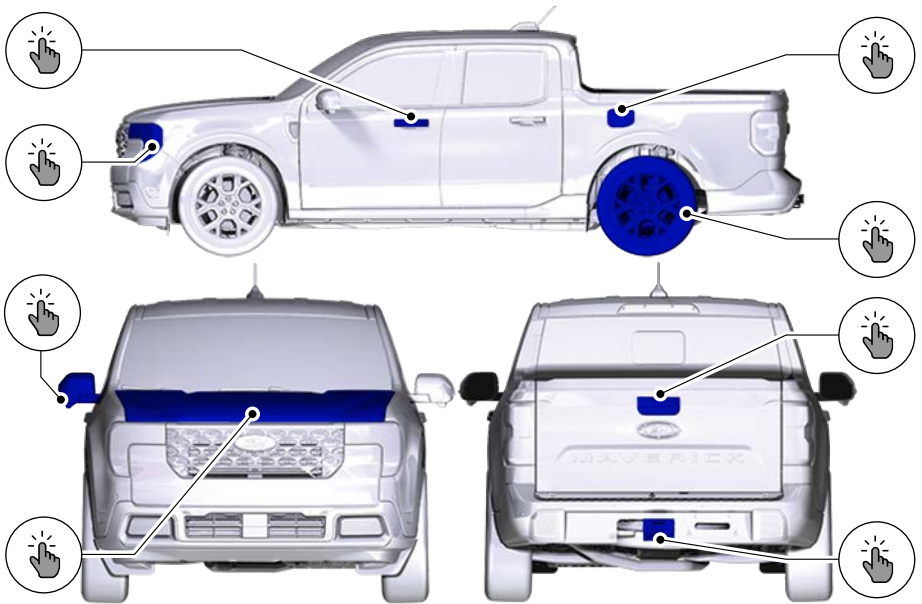
## INTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 85).
- B See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 216). See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 220).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 102).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 105).
- E See **Center Display Overview** (page 424).
- F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 137).
- G See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 316).
- H See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 118).
- I See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 98).

# Visual Search

## EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 68).
- B See **Refueling Your Vehicle** (page 161). See **Refueling Your Vehicle** (page 159).
- C See **Changing a Flat Tire** (page 399).
- D See **Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 74).
- E See **Towing a Trailer Precautions** (page 277).
- F See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 338).
- G See **Folding the Exterior Mirrors** (page 99).
- H See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 85).

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to [www.nhtsa.dot.gov](http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov). In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.



# Child Safety

**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When installing a child restraint with seatbelts:

- Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint.
- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

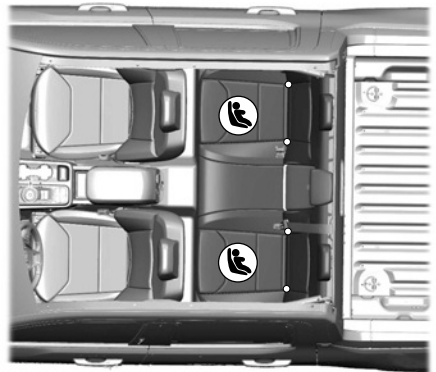
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

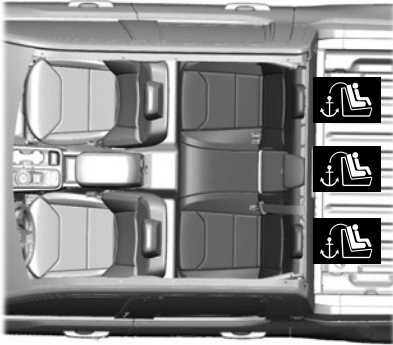
Anchor points allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



# Child Safety

## LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Install the child restraint tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

### Rear Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt Only
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		<b>X</b>

### Forward Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>

# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.

When possible, properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

When installing a rear facing child restraint, adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### USING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

**Note:** *Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward-facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear-facing child restraint.*

Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with seatbelts:

# Child Safety

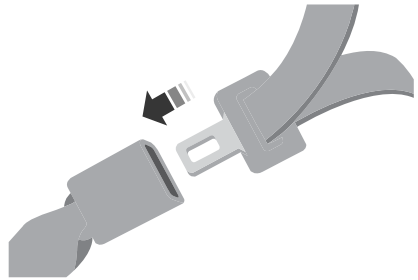
1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a seatbelt.



2. After positioning the child restraint in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure that you did not twist the belt webbing.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the belt out.

**Note:** *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

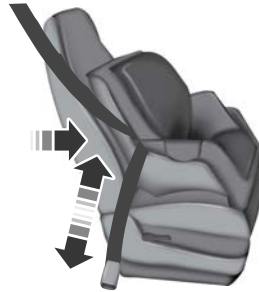
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

# Child Safety

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor did not lock, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

## USING LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHERS FOR CHILDREN



**WARNING:** Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) system has three vehicle anchor points.

- Two lower anchors where the seat backrest and seat cushion meet, called the seat bight.
- One top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH-compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH-equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint.

However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.

Follow the instructions on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

## INSTALLING A CHILD RESTRAINT IN A CENTER SEAT



**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 in (46 cm) apart. You cannot install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments at the center seating position. You can only use LATCH compatible child restraints with attachments on belt webbing at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the child restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than 1 in (2.5 cm).

If you did not properly anchor the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

# Child Safety

## COMBINING THE SEATBELT AND LOWER ANCHORS FOR ATTACHING CHILD RESTRAINTS

When used in combination, you may attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if it is included with the child restraint.

## USING TETHER STRAPS

Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.

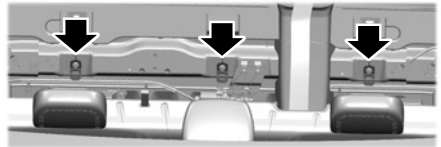
Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once you install the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

Perform the following steps to install a child restraint with tether anchors.

**Note:** *If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For the outermost seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating position, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.
2. To access the top tether anchors, pull the strap on the top of the rear seat backrest and fold the backrest forward.



3. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
5. Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

# Child Safety

- Return the rear seat backrest to its original rearward and locked position. Pull slightly on the seat backrest and make sure that it is locked.

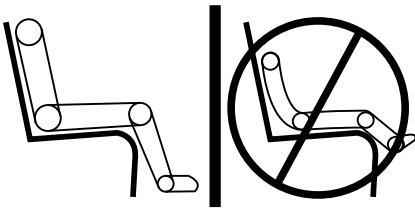
## BOOSTER SEATS

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint and meet the following criteria.

- Generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall.
- Are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12).
- Are between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg).

Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer yes to all of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?

- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

## Types of Booster Seats



- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield.

If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head, as measured at the tops of the ears, above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high-back booster seat.



# Child Safety



- High-back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high-back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder.

The following drawings compare the ideal fit to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



# Child Safety

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not use any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

**Note:** To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

### Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

### Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** Children must always be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair. Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.



**WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- A shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, except driver seatbelt.
- Height adjusters at the front outermost seating positions.

# Seatbelts

- Seatbelt pretensioners at the front outermost and second row outermost seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outermost passenger seating position.



A seatbelt warning light and tone.

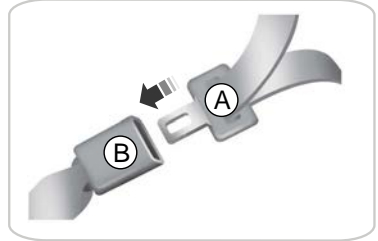


Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a Safety Canopy airbag deploys.

## FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



- A Seatbelt tongue.
- B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

**Note:** *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

### Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

# Seatbelts

## SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

Sensitive locking mode is a seatbelt retractor feature that allows shoulder belt length adjustment according to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

### HOW DOES SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE WORK

If the driver suddenly brakes, turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the seatbelt retractor locks if you pull the seatbelt webbing out too quickly. If the retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract.

If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

## AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

This is a safety feature built into the seatbelt retractors that keeps the seatbelts pre-locked.

## ENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## DISENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.

### Extracting Seatbelts in the Rear Outermost Seat Positions

Seatbelts in the rear outermost positions can lock if you firmly return the seat backrest to its upright position. You can unlock the seatbelts using the following procedures.

For vehicles where the rear seats recline:

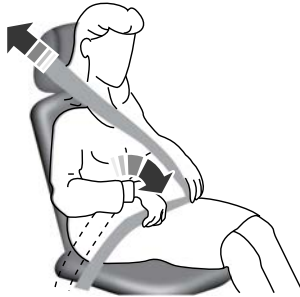
1. Recline the seat to its full rear recline position.

# Seatbelts

2. The seatbelt should then unlock.
3. Return the seat backrest to its desired upright position.

For vehicles with rear seats that do not recline or are locked with the seat in its full rear recline position:

1. Grasp the seatbelt webbing at the top of the seat backrest.
2. Pull the seatbelt webbing forward, firmly.
3. After pulling the seatbelt forward, allow the seatbelt to feed back into the seatbelt retractor as much as possible. If necessary, press the seat backrest down to allow the seatbelt webbing to retract further.
4. The seatbelt should then unlock.
5. If the seatbelt does not unlock, repeat steps 1-3.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.



**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



# Seatbelts

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### HOW DOES THE SEATBELT REMINDER WORK



**WARNING:** The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

This feature provides an audible or visual alert when you or an occupant unfastens a seatbelt.

The alert remains on until:

- You open and close a door.
- You fasten the seatbelt for any seat that is occupied.
- You switch the vehicle off and then on.

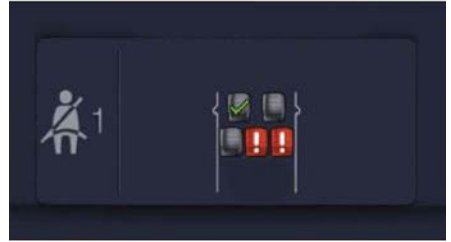
### SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS



This lamp illuminates if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The lamp switches off when you fasten your seatbelt.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Note:** To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the front passenger seat.



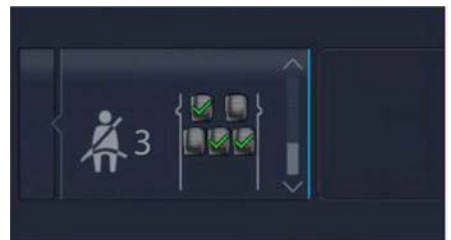
This warning displays if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

**Note:** If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning will not display.

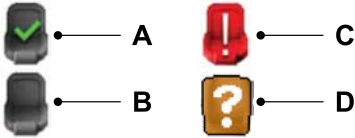
**Note:** Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.

### Seatbelt Status

To view the seatbelt status, use the information cluster controls on the steering wheel.



# Seatbelts



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

## SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The tone switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute elapses.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This warning tone sounds if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

This tone also sounds if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

## SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

**Note:** The driver and front passenger warnings switch off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position and the other seat is occupied, fasten the other seat.

Read Steps 1 - 4 before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Make sure that:

- You set the parking brake.
  - The transmission is in park (P).
  - The ignition is off.
  - You close all vehicle doors.
  - You unfasten the driver and front passenger seatbelts.
1. Start the engine.
  2. Wait a short period of time until the seatbelt warning light switches off. After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
  3. For the seating position you are switching off, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt four times at a moderate speed, ending in the unfastened state. After each unfasten, the seatbelt warning light switches on and off with each fasten.
  4. The seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

This switches the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.

This switches the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

## CHECKING THE SEATBELTS

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.



# Seatbelts

Check the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Front seatbelt buckle assemblies.
- Shoulder belt height adjusters.
- Child restraint LATCH and tether anchors.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Cleaning Seatbelts** (page 372).

## SEATBELT EXTENSIONS



**WARNING:** Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Only use extensions provided free of charge by our dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.



**WARNING:** Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the way the seatbelt fits across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from our dealers. Only use our seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelt manufacturer with our seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your vehicle restraint system.

# Personal Safety System™

---

## WHAT IS THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM

An advanced safety system that protects occupants in frontal crashes.

## HOW DOES THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM WORK

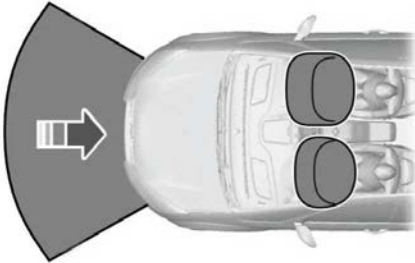
This system provides an improved level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system analyzes occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, and one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

## PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- Restraint system warning light and tone.
  - The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.
- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
  - Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
  - Driver seat position sensor.
  - Passenger seat position sensor.
  - Front passenger sensing system.
  - Passenger airbag off and on indicators.
  - Front crash severity sensors.
  - Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.

# Airbags

## HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The driver and front passenger airbags deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 58).

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium


compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.


Contact with a deploying airbag may cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag.

Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

## HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

 **WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the airbags and the seatbelt from retracting correctly which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of the front seat backrests. In certain sideways crashes or rollovers, the airbags inflate. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided to occupants in side impact crashes.



The system consists of:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that the vehicle has side airbags.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 58).

## HOW DO THE KNEE AIRBAGS WORK

The driver knee airbag is under or within the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the knee airbag based on crash severity and respective occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the knee airbag may deploy but the corresponding front airbag may not activate. It is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 58).

## HOW DOES THE SAFETY CANOPY™ WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



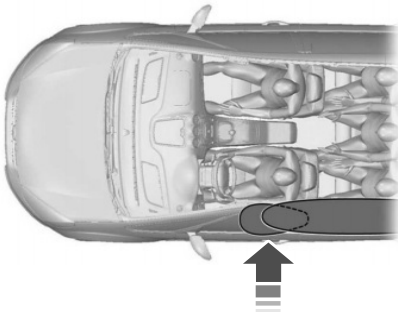
**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

# Airbags

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy inflates between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



The system consists of the following:


- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment





• Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 58).


Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

## AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

 **WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## PROPERLY ADJUSTING THE DRIVER AND FRONT PASSENGER SEATS



**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. Properly seated occupants sit upright, lean against the seat backrest, and center themselves on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

## CHILDREN AND AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Airbags



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

### HOW DOES THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM WORK

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

**Note:** *When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.*



The indicator lamps are on the right side of the instrument panel.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

**Note:** *Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.*

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint, but the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

# Airbags

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.

- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 58).

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.



# Airbags

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Failure to follow this instruction may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



**WARNING:** Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM INDICATORS

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

# Airbags

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front of your vehicle could affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. This includes the hood, bumper system, frame, front body structure, tow hooks, hood pins, push bar and snowplows.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors. These sensors provide information to the restraints control module which deploys the following:

- Seatbelt pretensioners.
- Driver airbag.
- Passenger airbag.
- Knee airbag(s).
- Seat mounted side airbags.
- Safety Canopy.

Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The safety system displays an indicator in the instrument cluster when it is ready. The system sends out a tone if it is not working. The airbag does not require routine maintenance.

One or more of the following indicates a difficulty with the system:



The readiness light does not immediately illuminate after you switch the ignition on.

- The readiness light either flashes or stays on.
- You hear a series of five beeps. The tone pattern periodically repeats until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced immediately at an authorized dealer. Unless serviced, the system may not properly function in the event of a crash.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, seatbelt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The design of the front and rear seatbelt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.
- The design of the knee airbag(s) is to deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

# Airbags

---

- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

## **DISPOSING OF AIRBAGS**

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# 911 Assist (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS 911 ASSIST

911 Assist is a SYNC system feature that can call for help.

For more information, visit [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## HOW DOES 911 ASSIST WORK

If a crash deploys an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected **Bluetooth**® enabled phone.

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone. SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides about 10 seconds to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel.

If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator. The occupants in your vehicle are able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

During an emergency call the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service.

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.



**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

- SYNC is powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a **Bluetooth**® enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected **Bluetooth**® enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

## 911 Assist (If Equipped)

---

- A connected **Bluetooth**® enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is off and the phone connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

**Note:** *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

### EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number. The following are limitations of this feature:

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Make sure a valid remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and rear of vehicle.

The system may not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows, moonroof or other controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

**Note:** *The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.*

### Unlock



Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 68).

### Lock



Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 68).

### Remote Start (If Equipped)



Press the button within three seconds to remote start. See **Using Remote Start** (page 109).

### Panic Alarm (If Equipped)



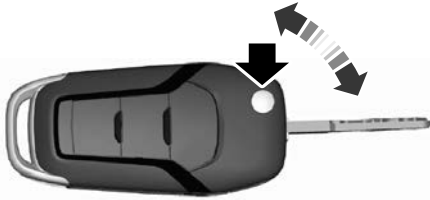
Press the button to sound the panic alarm. See **Sounding the Panic Alarm** (page 63).

# Keys and Remote Controls

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY

### Opening Your Flip Key

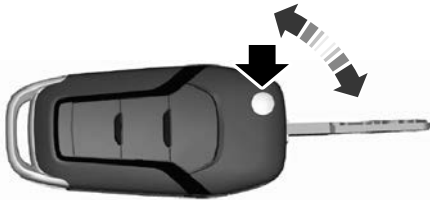
Press the round button on the remote control to extend the flip key.



**Note:** *Inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush.*

### Closing Your Flip Key

Press and hold the round button on the remote control to fold the key blade when not in use.



## REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button on your passive key and pull the key blade out.

## SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again, or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

**Note:** *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

## LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash.

**Note:** *We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.*

# Keys and Remote Controls

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: FLIP KEY

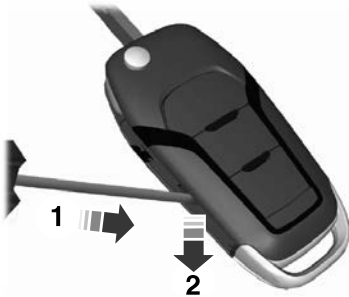
**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

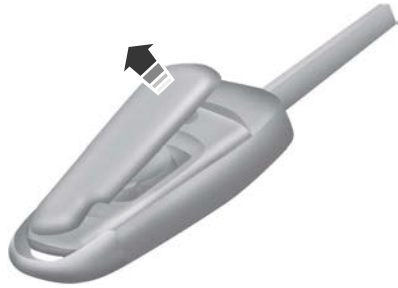
### Battery Replacement Procedure

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Press the button to release the key blade before beginning the procedure.



1. Insert a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



3. Carefully remove the cover.



4. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.



**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

5. Remove the battery.



# Keys and Remote Controls

6. Install a new battery with the + facing up.
7. Replace the battery cover.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



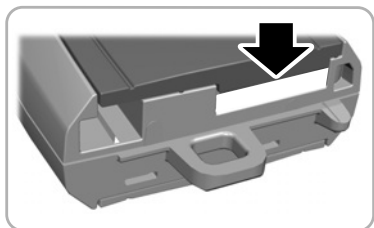
**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

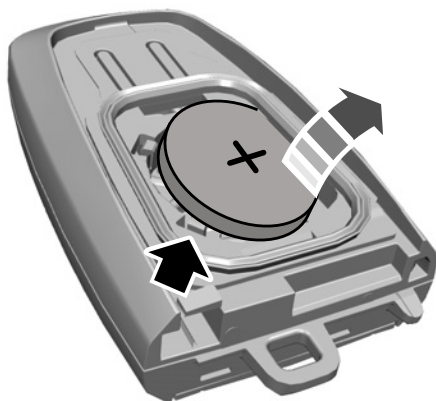


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

## Keys and Remote Controls



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

### REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---



**Note:** *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

## **PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL**

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

## **KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES**

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Replace remote control battery.

# Doors and Locks

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

#### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

#### One-Stage Unlocking



Press the button to unlock all doors.

#### Two-Stage Unlocking (If Equipped)



Press the button to unlock the driver's door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors.

#### Locking the Doors



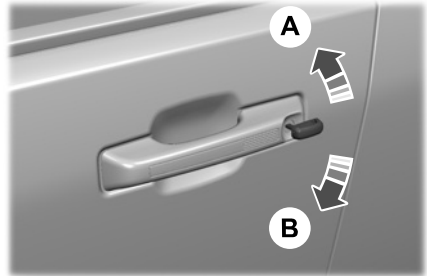
Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms your vehicle is locked.

A tone sounds when you press the lock button twice within three seconds on the remote control to confirm your vehicle is locked.

**Note:** You can also lock and unlock your vehicle without using the remote control. See **Keyless Entry** (page 72).

## UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault, use the key blade to lock and unlock the driver door.



- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the front doors.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

**Note:** The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

# Doors and Locks

---

## OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

## DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR

### HOW DOES THE DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR WORK

The door lock switch inhibitor is a theft protection feature that prevents someone unlocking the vehicle from inside using the power door lock control switch.

When you lock your vehicle with the remote control, the power door lock control switch does no longer operate after 20 seconds.

**Note:** *You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore the power door lock control switch function.*

## AUTOUNLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

### AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

**Note:** *Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.*

## SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Autounlock on or off.

## AUTOLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that centrally locks your vehicle doors when driving.

### AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and the ignition is on.
2. Your vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

Autolock repeats if:

1. Your vehicle is stopped.
2. Any door is opened and closed again.
3. Your vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

## MISLOCK

### WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

# Doors and Locks

## MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

When you press the lock button twice within three seconds, the horn sounds if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

## SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Locks.

3. Switch Mislock on or off.

## DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

#### Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver Door Ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger Door Ajar	
Rear Left Door Ajar	
Rear Right Door Ajar	
Hood Ajar	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

# Doors and Locks

---

## **DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?**

- Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

# Keyless Entry

## WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

## KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function (If Equipped)

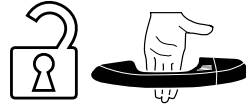
You can enable the two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

## USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### Unlocking the Doors



With your passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful not to touch the lock sensor at the same time or pull on the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your intelligent access key.

### Locking the Doors



With your passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful not to touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.



# Keyless Entry

---

## KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### **Why does the keyless entry system not function?**

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 72). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

#### **Why can I not lock my vehicle?**

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the tailgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

# Tailgate

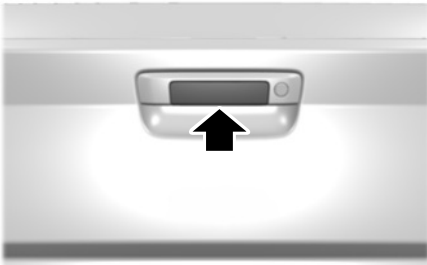
## TAILGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

## OPENING THE TAILGATE

### OPENING THE TAILGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull up on the handle to release the tailgate.

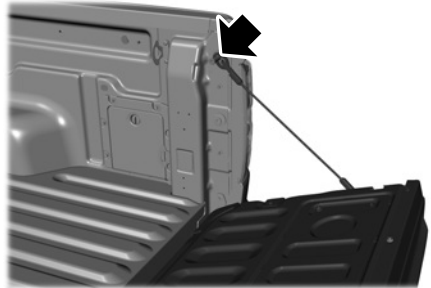
**Note:** You may need to unlock the tailgate first.

### OPENING THE TAILGATE TO THE MIDDLE POSITION

1. Open the tailgate.



2. Raise the tailgate slightly to allow slack in the tailgate cables.



3. Use the pull tabs to unlock the clip on each connector, move the clip past the head of the support screw and disconnect the cable.
4. Move the tailgate cables and secure them to the tailgate strikers.

**Note:** Attach both cables when using the tailgate in the middle position.

**Note:** The tailgate should not be closed while the cables are secured to the tailgate striker.

**Note:** Attach the safety bracket when using the tailgate in the middle position.

# Tailgate

When hauling cargo using the tailgate middle position, make sure the load is evenly distributed and supported using the support locations in the pickup bed. See

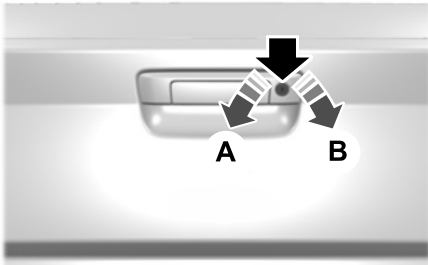
**Locating the Pickup Bed Slots** (page 273).

**Note:** *Secure all cargo.*

**Note:** *The maximum load capacity for the middle position is 500 lb (226 kg) evenly distributed to the 2 pickup box wheelhouse locations and the tailgate.*

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE TAILGATE

### Manual




- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

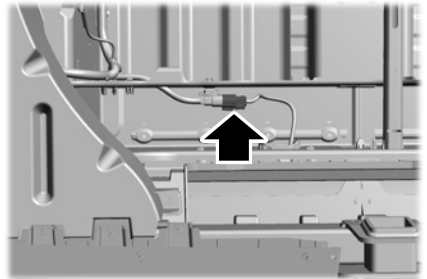
1. Insert the ignition key into the tailgate lock.
2. Turn it to the left to lock the tailgate.
3. Turn it to the right to unlock the tailgate.

### Power

You can lock and unlock the tailgate with the remote control or power door unlock control.

## REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE TAILGATE

 **WARNING:** Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

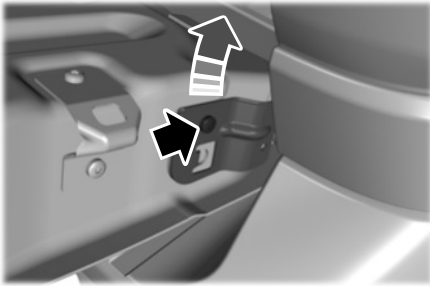


**Note:** *Before removing the tailgate, make sure you have the tailgate removal kit with the protective caps. Protective caps are sold separately by your authorized dealer. Failure to install the protective caps may result in damage to the electrical system not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

1. Unlatch and open tailgate.
2. Disconnect the power door locks in-line connector located under the pickup box on the right-hand side of the vehicle near the spare tire.
3. Install the protective cap on the end of the in-line connector that remains under the pickup box.
4. Partially lift the tailgate. Carefully feed the tailgate harness up through the gap between the pickup box and the bumper and place it out of the way under the pickup box.

# Tailgate

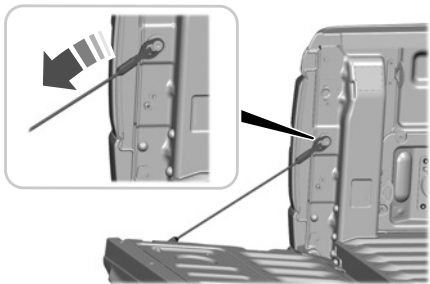
5. Lower the tailgate.
6. Remove the screw and safety bracket.



13. Install the tailgate in reverse order.

7. Use the pull tabs to unlock the clip on each connector, move the clip past the head of the support screw and disconnect the cable.

**Note:** To avoid damaging the tailgate, you may need assistance when removing. The tailgate weighs approximately 55 lb (25 kg).



8. Disconnect the other cable.
9. Lift the tailgate to 45 degrees from the horizontal position.
10. Lift the right-hand side off its hinge.
11. Lift the tailgate to 80 degrees from the horizontal position.
12. Remove the tailgate from the left-hand side hinge by sliding it to the right.

# Security

---

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.*

### HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

**Note:** *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

(IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

## HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

## WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

## ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

## DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

# Security

---

## SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No Key Detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm	

# Security

---

## **SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?**

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### **What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?**

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

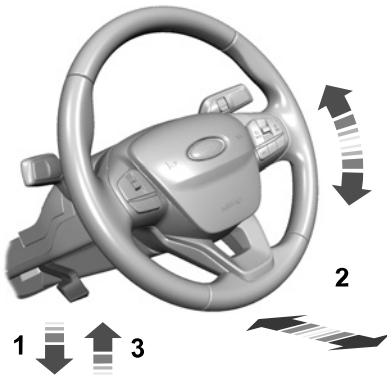
# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 118).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.
3. Lock the steering column.

## HORN



Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen. An indicator illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

**Note:** The engine must be running to use the heated steering wheel.

**Note:** A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.

**Note:** The heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle, depending on the remote start settings. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the engine was switched off.

**Note:** In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.



# Wipers and Washers

## WIPERS

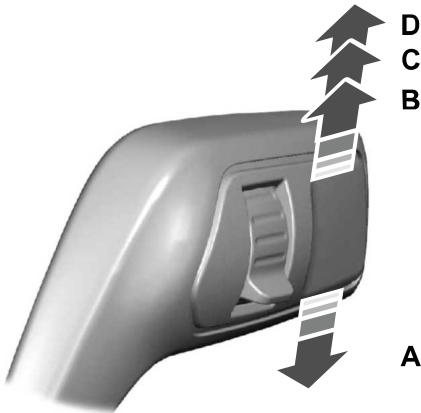
### WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

### SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.



Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

### CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

### REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

**Note:** For vehicles with a service position, make sure the windshield wipers are in this position before proceeding.

**Note:** You can use the service position to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice.

**Note:** Switch the windshield wipers off before switching the ignition off.

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

1. Move the wiper blades to the service position.

**Note:** To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.

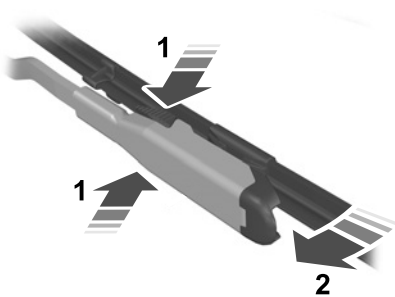
**Note:** Do not manually move the wiper arms to the service position unless the wiper path is obstructed by snow or ice.

# Wipers and Washers



2. Lift the wiper arms away from the windshield.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



3. Press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

4. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
5. Replace the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

6. Lower the wiper arms to the windshield.
7. Switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Do not switch the ignition on or turn on the accessory mode when the wiper blades are off the windshield.

8. Cycle the wipers once.

## WASHERS

### WASHER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 41°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

### USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



# Wipers and Washers



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

**Note:** A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 83).

## SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Courtesy Wipe on or off.

**Note:** When you switch the feature on, the wipers make an additional single wipe at the end of the washer request. When you switch it off, the wipers finish the current washer request.

## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

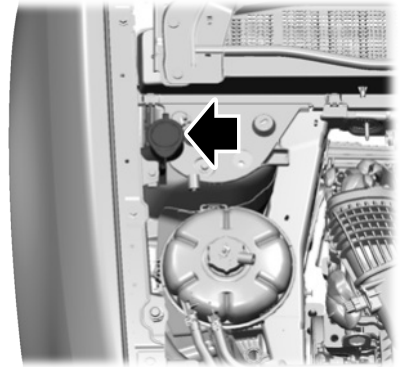
### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid -35 °C / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité - 35 °C Motorcraft®(Canada) ZC-32-B2(U.S.) CXC-37-M(Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A

## ADDING WASHER FLUID



1. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
2. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 83).
3. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

**Note:** The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

# Wipers and Washers

---

## WIPERS AND WASHERS VIDEOS

[Improving Your Windshield Wiper  
Performance Video Link](#)

[Courtesy Wipe Video Link](#)

## WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

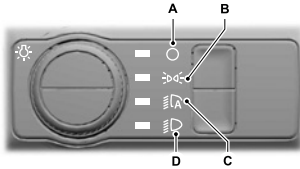
### WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 81). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 81).

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

## HEADLAMPS

### USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

**Note:** Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

### SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

**Note:** The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

## HEADLAMP INDICATORS

### Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

### Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

# Exterior Lighting

## HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

#### How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

#### How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

#### How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

#### What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

#### Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

### AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

#### Autolamp Exit Delay

You can adjust the amount of time the autolamps remain on after you switch off your vehicle. Use the touchscreen to choose a delay setting.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Press Autolamp Delay.
4. Select a setting.

**Note:** *If the setting is off, the external lamps switch off immediately when you shut down your vehicle.*

**Note:** *You can pull the turn signal toward you to manually switch off the autolamp exit delay.*

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

### Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

### SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: CONFIGURABLE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch the daytime running lights on or off.

The daytime running lamps turn on when all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You switch the vehicle on.
- The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or you release the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
- The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
- The headlamps are off.

**Note:** Other lighting control positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

# Exterior Lighting

## SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (DRL)



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

## USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS (If Equipped)

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

**Note:** When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

**Note:** The front fog lamps lights switch off automatically when high beams are activated.

## Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## SWITCHING THE CARGO LAMPS ON (If Equipped)



Press the button in the lighting control panel or in the rear cargo box to switch on the lamps.



**Note:** The cargo lamps turn off when you reach a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h). They also turn off after 10 minutes, fading gradually to off.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.



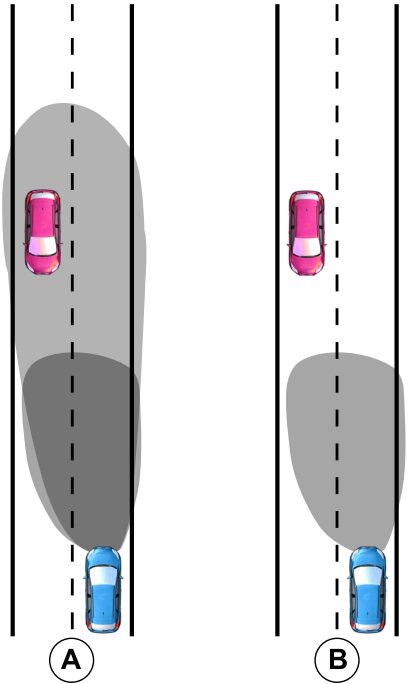
# Exterior Lighting

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

# Exterior Lighting



**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

**Note:** *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. From the Settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch auto high beam on or off.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

# Exterior Lighting

---

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

## **AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES**

<b>Message</b>	<b>Details</b>
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Interior Lighting

## SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

### Switching All of the Interior Lamps On



Press the button on the overhead console toward the icon.

### Switching All of the Interior Lamps Off



Press the button on the overhead console toward the icon.

When the switch is in this position the interior lights do not turn on when the door is open.

## SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Press the edge of the lamp lens.

## SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

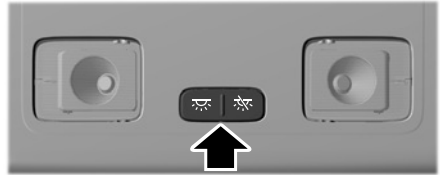
**Note:** If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

## INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

### SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



Set the switch to the middle position.

## ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



**Note:** There are six levels of brightness adjustments available during the day and twelve levels of brightness adjustments available at night.

# Interior Lighting

---

## **AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)**

### **SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF**

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.  
See **Center Display** (page 424).
2. Press Ambient Lighting.

Drag the slider above zero brightness to switch ambient lighting on.

Drag the slider to zero brightness to switch ambient lighting off.

### **ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING**

Drag the slider left or right.

## **INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

#### **Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?**

- The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

# Windows

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### Resetting One-Touch Up

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until you fully close the door window. Continue to hold the window control switch for a few seconds after you close the window.
2. Release the window control switch.
3. Press and hold the window control switch until you fully open the door window.
4. Release the window control switch.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until you fully close the window.
6. Test for correct window operation by carrying out the one-touch down and one-touch up features.

### Accessory Delay

When you switch the ignition off, the window switches remain operational for several minutes or until you open either front door.

## WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

# Windows

## OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

**Note:** *The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.*

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

## LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



**WARNING:** When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE SLIDING WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



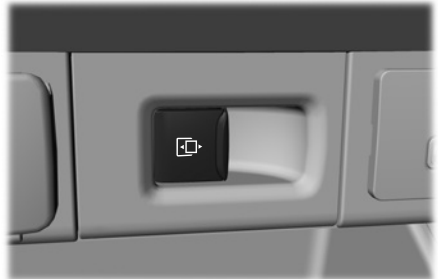
**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



# Windows

---

The window control switch is on the instrument panel below the climate controls.

Press and hold the window control switch to open the window. Pull and hold the window control switch to close the window.



# Interior Mirror

---

## INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

# Exterior Mirrors

## ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Window lock.
- B Adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror.
- D Left-hand mirror.

To adjust the mirrors, switch your vehicle on and place the ignition in accessory or start.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

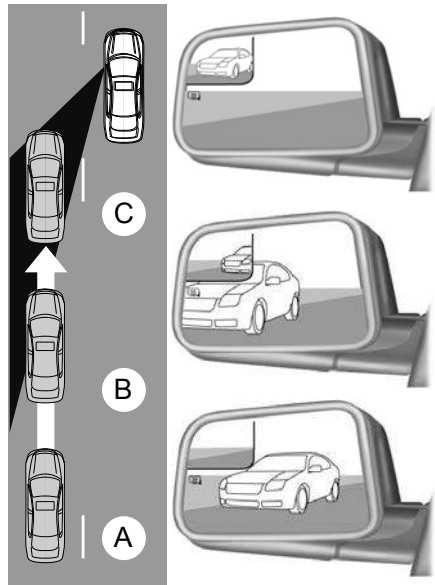
### Integrated Blind Spot Mirror (if Equipped)



**WARNING:** Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They can assist you by increasing visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.



# Exterior Mirrors

---

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image transitions from the main mirror and begins to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle transitions to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

## **Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)**

See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off** (page 111).

## **FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS**

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## **Directional Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)**

When your vehicle is running, the forward-facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

## **Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)**

The puddle lamps turn on when you approach your vehicle with a remote control or phone. If your vehicle has auto folding mirrors, the puddle lamps are only on if the mirrors are unfolded and turn off when the mirrors fold.

## **360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)**


See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 213).


## **Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)**

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 245).

## Glass Roof (If Equipped)


### OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUNSHADE


 **WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.


 **WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the sunshade and get caught in a closing sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sliding sunshade can be manually opened or closed when the glass roof is closed. Pull the sunshade toward the front of the vehicle to close it.

### OPENING AND CLOSING THE GLASS ROOF

 **WARNING:** Do not allow anyone to stand or place any portion of their body through the open glass roof while the vehicle is in motion. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the glass roof and could become trapped in a closing glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.


The controls are on the overhead console.


#### Opening the Glass Roof



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch open feature. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

#### Closing the Glass Roof

 **WARNING:** When closing the glass roof, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the glass roof immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch close feature, from either the open or vent positions. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

# Glass Roof (If Equipped)

---

## VENTING THE GLASS ROOF



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The glass roof controls are on the overhead console.



With the glass roof in the closed position, press and release the switch to vent the glass roof. To close the glass roof from the vent position, press and release the switch again.

## GLASS ROOF BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS GLASS ROOF BOUNCE-BACK

The glass roof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

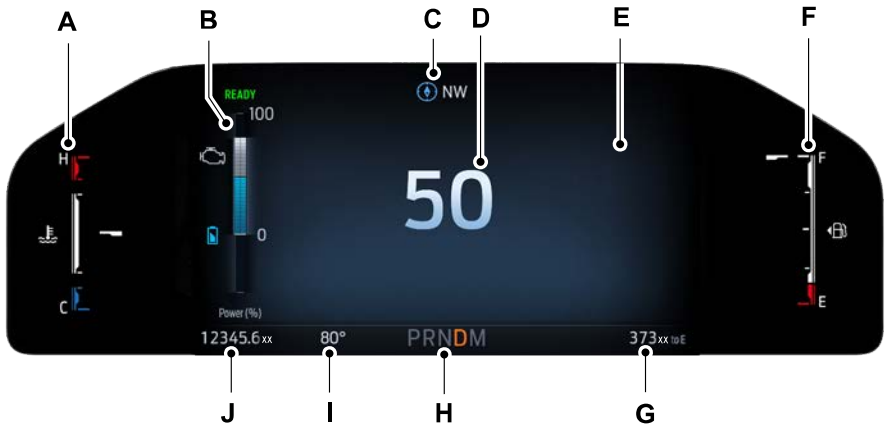
### OVERRIDING GLASS ROOF BOUNCE-BACK

Press and hold the close switch within two seconds after the glass roof comes to a stop.

# Instrument Cluster

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

**Note:** Depending on the setting you select, your cluster could look different than what you see here.

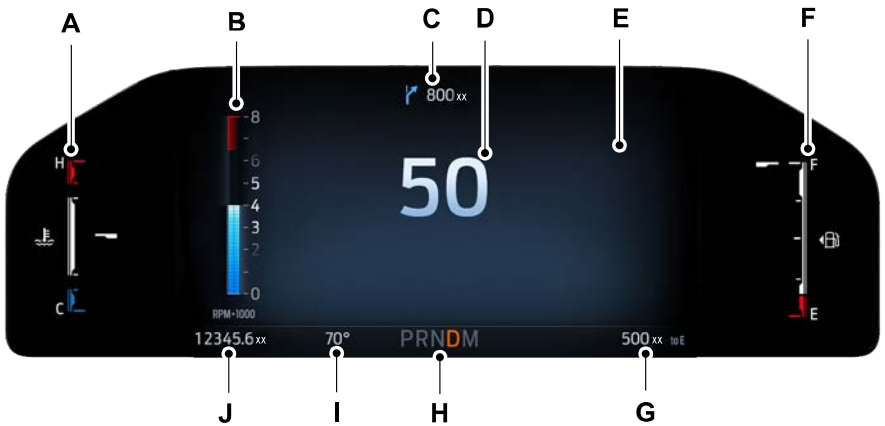


- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Power gauge.
- C Compass or Navigation.
- D Speedometer.
- E Information on demand area.
- F Fuel gauge.
- G Distance to empty.
- H Transmission position indicator.
- I Outside air temperature.
- J Odometer.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - GASOLINE

**Note:** Depending on the setting you select, your cluster could look different than what you see here.

# Instrument Cluster



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Tachometer.
- C Compass or Navigation.
- D Speedometer.
- E Information on demand area.
- F Fuel gauge.
- G Distance to empty.
- H Transmission position indicator.
- I Outside air temperature.
- J Odometer.

## TACHOMETER - GASOLINE

Indicates the engine speed.

# Instrument Cluster

---

## **POWER GAUGE - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)**

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

## **SPEEDOMETER**

Indicates the vehicle speed.

## **FUEL GAUGE**

### **WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE**

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

### **FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS**

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

### **LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR**

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

### **WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER**

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km).

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

### **WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY**

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

### **ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE**

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.



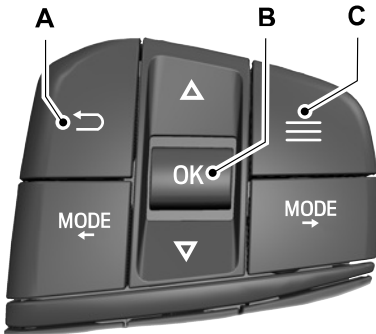
# Instrument Cluster Display

## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

### Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

### OK Button

Press to make a selection.

### Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

### Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items may appear different or not at all.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Towing
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Audio
Phone
Navigation
Settings

# Instrument Cluster Display

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

### Adding Screens Using MyView

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Configure MyView**.
3. Select a screen.
4. Press the **OK** button.

**Note:** *The number of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear you must deselect screens from the MyView menu.*

## FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

This display comes with an instant fuel economy gauge, along with the average fuel economy. The gauge continuously averages the fuel economy since your last reset.

The system includes both the electric only and the hybrid operation in the calculation. More electric only driving results in a greater average fuel economy.

When driving only in electric mode, the instant fuel economy gauge is shown as empty (NaN mpg (0 L/100 km)) until the gasoline engine resumes operation

**Note:** *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

## FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - GASOLINE

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

**Note:** *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

## EV COACH - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

EV coach can help you get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving capabilities.

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine turns on.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is blue. This means you are in electric operation and the engine is off.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means you are in hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal, a green or white solid bar displays indicating the power being used to slow down your vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

# Instrument Cluster Display

---

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar will be all green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow your vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When the power level is outside of the box, then the bar is white. This means both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

## **BRAKE COACH - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)**

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

**Note:** *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 105).

## **TRIP SUMMARY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)**

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen.

# Trip Computer

---

## ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate to the main menu.
2. Select **Trip/Fuel**.
3. Select **Trip 1** or **Trip 2**.

## RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate to the main menu.
2. Select **Trip/Fuel**.
3. Select **Trip 1** or **Trip 2**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

# Remote Start (If Equipped)

## USING REMOTE START





**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature.

1.  Press the button on the remote control.
2.  Press the button twice within a few seconds.

When you successfully remote start your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is already on.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.



To remotely stop your vehicle, press the button.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Remote Start Setup.

You can adjust the following in the remote start settings menu:

- Enable or disable remote start.
- Climate control settings.
- Heated seat settings.
- Heated steering wheel settings.
- Remote start duration.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

## IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options, the controls may look different from what you see here.

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

**Note:** To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

**Note:** You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF

EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

**Note:** You can press + or - to set the temperature.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

### SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

---

**Note:** When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

**Note:** Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.



# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

- Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM REFRIGERANT



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Your vehicle has an under hood label that identifies the refrigerant used by the air conditioning system.

**Note:** Only allow a trained and certified technician service the refrigerant system to ensure proper and safe operation, per the society of automotive engineers J2845.

**Note:** Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator with one from a salvage vehicle. Only replace it with a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

The meaning of each symbol on the under hood label are as follows:



Caution



Air conditioning system.



System lubricant type.



See vehicle service manual for service information.



Requires registered technician to service.



Flammable refrigerant.



Replace safety system components. Do not repair, reuse or try to salvage.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)

## IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options, the controls may look different from what you see here.

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

**Note:** To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

**Note:** You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF

EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

**Note:** You can press + or - to set the temperature.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)

---

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
  - To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

## Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

## Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

# Interior Air Quality

---

## WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

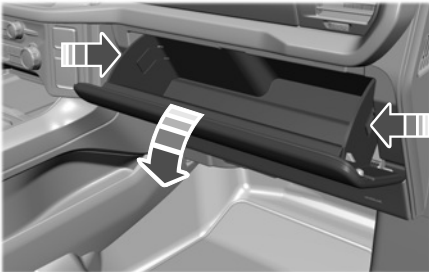
## REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 447).

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Press the tab on each side.
3. Fully lower the glove compartment.
4. Pull the glove compartment toward you.

# Front Seats

## FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

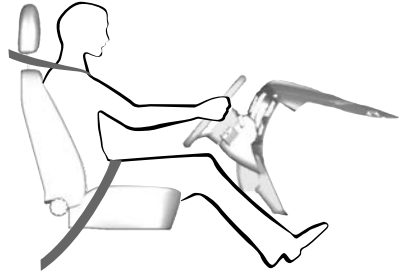


**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

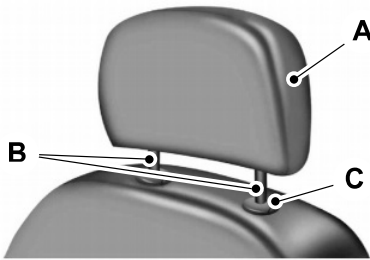
## Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

### MANUAL SEATS

#### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The front seat head restraints consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

#### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**⚠ WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

**⚠ WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**⚠ WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

# Front Seats

## REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

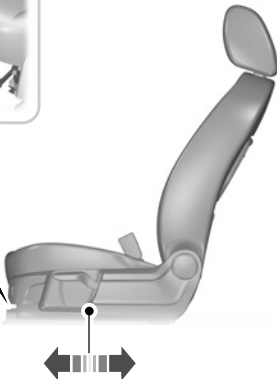
## INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



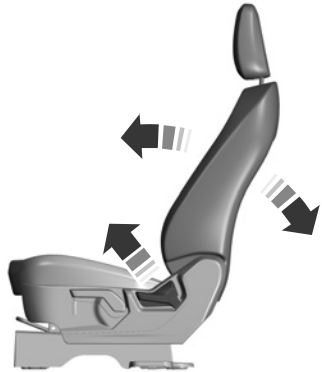
**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



## ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



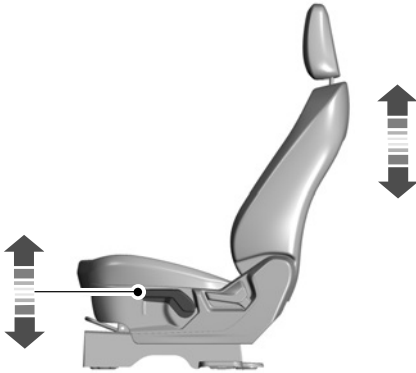
**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.





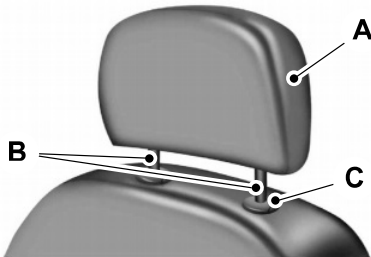
# Front Seats

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT (If Equipped)



## POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

## HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The front seat head restraints consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

## ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**⚠ WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

**⚠ WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**⚠ WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

# Front Seats

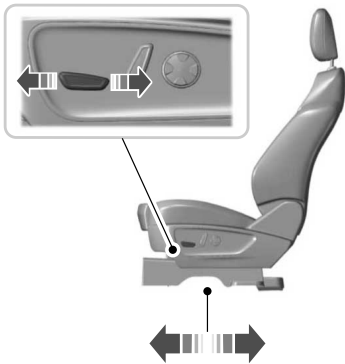
## REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

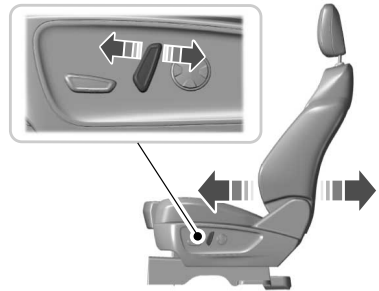
## INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

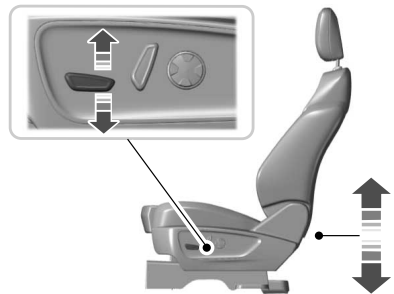
## MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



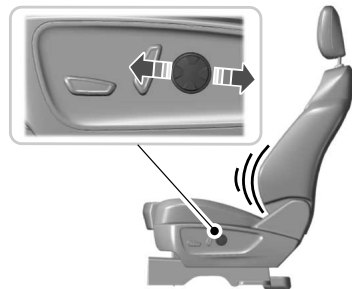
## ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



## ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



# Front Seats

## HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

**Note:** The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

**Note:** Select Auto to heat your seat based on your climate control settings, humidity and air temperature.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

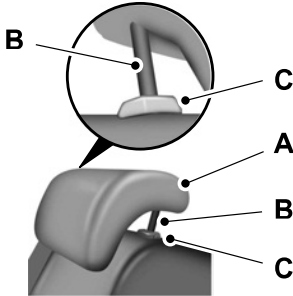
The vehicle must be running to use this feature.

# Rear Seats

## MANUAL SEATS

### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

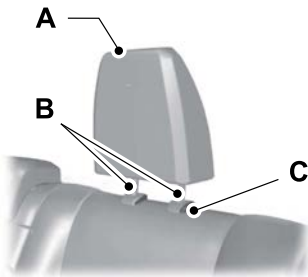
#### Center Head Restraint



The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

#### Outermost Head Restraint



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**⚠ WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

**⚠ WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**⚠ WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the center head restraint:

## Rear Seats

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

### ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Make sure that cargo and other objects are not trapped under the seat cushion and that you return the seat cushion to the full-down position. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly, which could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.



Pull either strap to raise the seat cushion.

### FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

## Rear Seats

---



Pull the strap to fold the backrest forward.

**Note:** Move the front seats forward to avoid interference between the front and rear seats. This provides more access to the back.

### UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** When unfolding the seat, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Rotate the seat backrest upright until it latches in the upright position.

**Note:** We recommend that you push the seat backrest upright from the passenger side of the vehicle.

# Rear Occupant Alert System

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

**Note:** *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

# Rear Occupant Alert System

**Note:** It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Select Alert & Horn or Alert Only or Off.

**Note:** The default setting is Alert Only.

**Note:** If you choose Alert only, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

**Note:** Performing a system reset causes the system to switch on again.

## Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Switch Child Seat Installed on or off.

**Note:** The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a LATCH system child seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

## Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch the power off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

**Note:** Depending on your center display system version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.



# Rear Occupant Alert System

---

## **REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS**

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

# USB Ports

## LOCATING THE USB PORTS

### Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

**Note:** *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

**Note:** *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

**Note:** *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

### Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Behind the first row seats.
- In the cargo area.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.



Press the audio button on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind.

## CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

# USB Ports

---

## Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

## Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

# Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 120V Power Outlet

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet is a socket that connects an electrical device to your vehicle's power supply.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

**Note:** The power outlet provides up to 400 Watts when the ignition is on. This wattage is divided between multiple outlets when in use at the same time.

**Note:** The power outlet turns off when you switch off the ignition, or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

## POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

You should not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws or other electric power tools and compressor-driven refrigerators.

- Measuring devices which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

**Note:** Some devices may exceed the power rating on the device label when they are initially plugged-in and may require you to press the device power button more than one time in order to allow a soft start. After multiple attempts, if the device remains off, please consider that your device may require more than the available power.

**Note:** The power outlet provides full available power when the vehicle is in park (P). Power availability may be reduced when the vehicle is in drive (D). If more than one outlet is available in the vehicle, power is divided between the outlets that are in use at the same time.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet could be on the instrument panel, the rear of the center console or in the pickup bed.

## POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

## Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 120V Power Outlet

---

Indicator Status	Description
On	When the indicator light is on, the outlet is providing power.
Off	When the indicator light is off, there is no power to the outlet.
Flashing	When the indicator light is flashing, the outlet is in a fault mode.

### Fault mode

The power outlet temporarily turns off power if the device exceeds the watt limit.

1. Unplug your device.
2. Switch your vehicle off to let the system cool and reset the fault mode.
3. Switch your vehicle back on, but do not plug your device back in.
4. With your vehicle on, make sure the indicator light remains on.
5. Make sure your device does not exceed the power limits and then plug in your device.

**Note:** *If a fault occurs again, your device may exceed the capacity available from the power outlet.*

# Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not plug electrical devices into the power outlets that exceed the maximum power rating. Incorrect use of the power outlets can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or personal injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the power outlets to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.

To prevent damage to the vehicle's battery:

- Do not use the power outlets over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow.
- Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
- Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power outlets caps closed when not in use.
- Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power outlets.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.
- Using devices for extended periods may require starting and running the engine to recharge the battery.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the front of the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- On the passenger side floor panel.
- 3rd row on the quarter trim panels.

## Wireless Accessory Charger (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

### WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



**WARNING:** Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

**Note:** During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

### LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console or in the media bin below the instrument panel.

### CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.

## Wireless Accessory Charger (If Equipped)

---



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

**Note:** *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

**Note:** *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*



# Storage

## CUP HOLDERS (IF EQUIPPED)

### CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## GLOVE COMPARTMENT

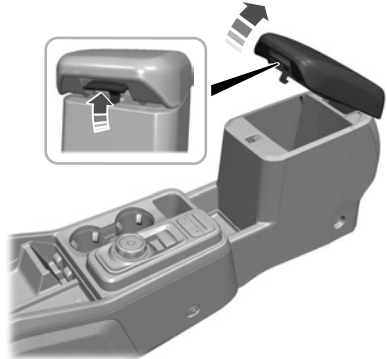
### OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



Pull the latch to the left to open the glove compartment.

## CENTER CONSOLE

### OPENING THE CENTER CONSOLE



Push the latch to open the center console.

# Storage

## UNDER SEAT STORAGE

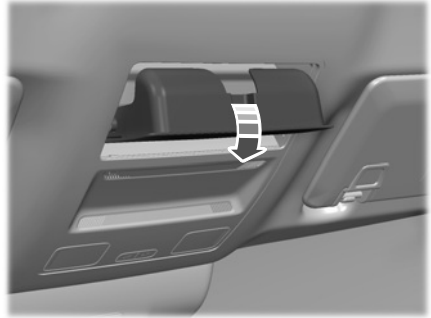
### LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT



Lift the front of the rear seat cushion.

## GLASSES HOLDER (IF EQUIPPED)

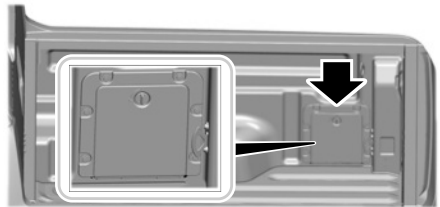
### LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER



The glasses holder is in the overhead console. Press near the rear edge of the door to open.

## PICKUP BED STORAGE (IF EQUIPPED)

### LOCATING THE PICKUP BED STORAGE

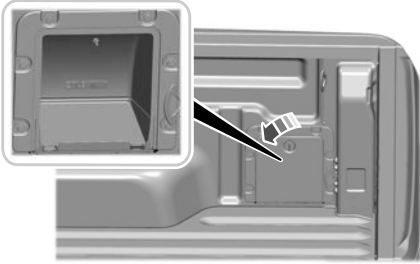


# Storage

---

## **OPENING THE PICKUP BED STORAGE**

To open the pickup bed storage, turn the latch.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## IGNITION SWITCH - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START (IF EQUIPPED)



### Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START (IF

EQUIPPED)



## Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

## Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

**Note:** Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after approximately 30 minutes of inactivity in accessory mode.

**Note:** The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

**Note:** You need a valid passive key inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine starts.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

### STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

## STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- The parking brake is on.
- The transmission is in park (P).

1. Press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position III.

**READY** When you start your vehicle, a green indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

When the engine starts for the first time, the idle speed increases to help warm up the engine. If the idle speed does not decrease, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**READY** When you start your vehicle, a green indicator appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not decrease, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.



**WARNING:** Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and engine block heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- If the engine block heater cord is under the hood, do not remove the wiring from its original location. Do not close the hood on the extension wiring.
- Park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- Firmly connect the engine block heater cord and the extension cord.
- Check the extension cord for heat anywhere when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle. The protective cover seals the terminals of the engine block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Check the engine block heater system for proper operation before winter.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## HOW DOES THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER WORK

The engine block heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 110 volt AC electrical source.

**Note:** *The engine block heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C). We recommend the use of engine block heater to improve engine cold start performance.*

## USING THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

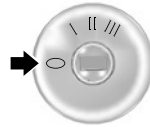
Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the engine block heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position **0**.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START



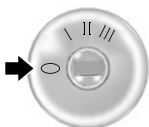
**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Only in case of emergency, do the following:



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to safely bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Only in case of emergency, do the following:



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to safely bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop is a feature that switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Switch 30min Max Idle on or off.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

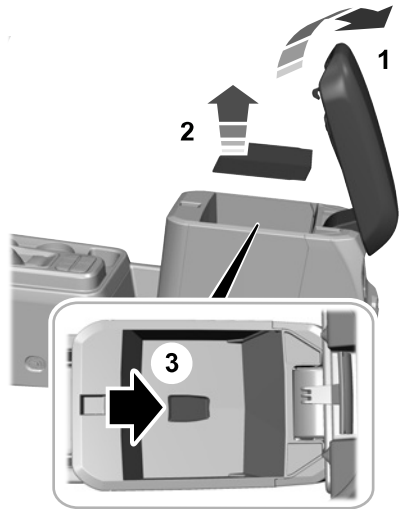
You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

## ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:



1. Open the center console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the plastic mat from the console floor.
3. With the buttons facing upward, place the passive key into the backup slot.
4. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal, then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, the on-board diagnostics system is detecting a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire could be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

#### Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a powertrain or four-wheel drive fault. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle could cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

#### Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting System Fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No Key Detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Why does the engine not crank?

- When you start your vehicle, a green indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

### Why is the engine speed high when the engine first starts?

- When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

### Why can I not start my vehicle when the high voltage battery is charged?

- Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. However 12-volt battery depletion can still occur, and in such case you are unable to start your vehicle. See **12V Battery** (page 354).

### Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start your vehicle, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start your vehicle. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 146).

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why is the engine not cranking?

The engine will not crank if:

- The system does not detect a valid passive key.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
- The brake pedal is not pressed for automatic transmissions or the clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
- The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
- The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.

### What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## What should I do if the engine does not start?

- If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:
1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.

2. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
3. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 141).

**Note:** The engine cranks for a short period of time and then stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.
5. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 141).

## Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for about 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

## Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 146).

## What happens when driving the vehicle without a valid key?

- A message displays in the instrument cluster if no valid key is detected, when you exit your vehicle with a key, after the last front door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in run, indicating your vehicle is still on. The horn sounds if you have driven the vehicle and reached a speed of 16 mph (25 km/h) and the above conditions are met.

You can switch the key detection audible alert on or off. See **Keyless Entry Settings** (page 72).

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why is the engine not cranking?

The engine will not crank if:

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

- The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
  - The brake pedal is not pressed for automatic transmissions or the clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
  - The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
  - The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.
3. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine stops cranking.
  4. Release the accelerator pedal.
  5. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine starts.

## Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

## What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

## What should I do if the engine does not start?

- If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:
1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.

2. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.



# Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION

A hybrid vehicle has an electric motor and a high voltage battery combined with a gasoline engine. The hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide optimal performance and improved efficiency.

### Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics

The gasoline engine starts and stops to provide power when required and to save fuel when not needed. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the gasoline engine to start or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Driving uphill.
- The high voltage battery charge level is low.
- Heating or cooling the vehicle interior in high or low outside temperatures.
- The gasoline engine is below normal operating temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Certain selectable drive modes could cause the engine to run. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 232).

Your hybrid vehicle also comes with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

You could also notice that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off during extended downhill driving. The engine stays on during this engine braking but is not using any fuel.

You could also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

**Note:** *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

### Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators


**READY** When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.

The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.

Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

### Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Warning Lamps

 It illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes your vehicle to shutdown or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

## Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Information Messages

Message	Details
Stop Safely Now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Frequently Asked Questions

### What should I do if the vehicle runs out of fuel and the high voltage battery is out of charge?

- Refuel and start your vehicle normally. The engine will recharge the high voltage battery.

### Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?

- The vehicle's computer determines if an engine start is required at key-on. It starts the engine when necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, if the high voltage battery is low, or if the outside temperature is low.

### Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?

- Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline) fuel, but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).

### Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?

- There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to make sure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emission. As the climate gets cooler, the engine-on time is extended.

### Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?

- In order to make sure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct coolant temperature.



# Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the button to switch the system off.

**Note:** **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

**Note:** Deactivating the system using the button lasts only one key cycle.

Press the button again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** The system turns off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take a message.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline

---

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

## AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

<b>Message</b>	<b>Condition</b>	<b>Action</b>
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline

---

## **AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Can I permanently switch the system off?**


No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.


### **Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?**


Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.


# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

 **WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

 **WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

 **WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

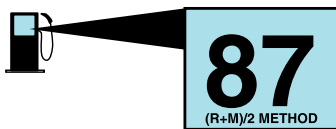
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

## FUEL QUALITY

### SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL



Your vehicle operates on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

# Fuel and Refueling

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 277).

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance.

For additional information, visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

**Note:** *Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol (E15) or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

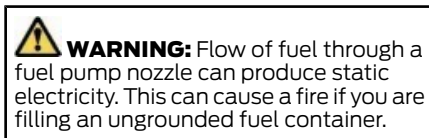
The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl, which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

## LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is behind the right-hand side rear seat with the vehicle jack.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

### FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER





Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:


- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

# Fuel and Refueling

## ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

 **WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

 **WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 157).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

**Note:** If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.

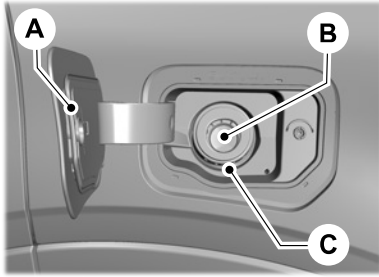
**Note:** You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

# Fuel and Refueling

## REFUELING

### REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

### REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - HYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

**WARNING:** Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

**WARNING:** Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

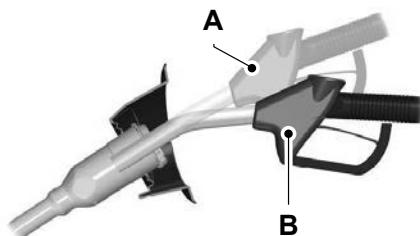
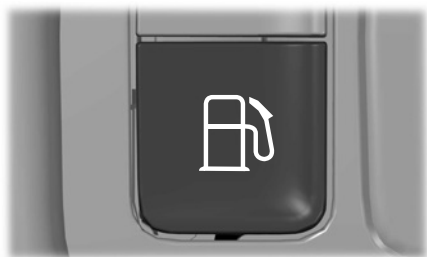
**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

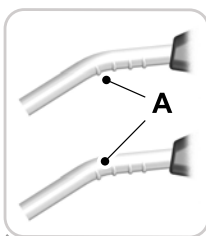
1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

## Fuel and Refueling

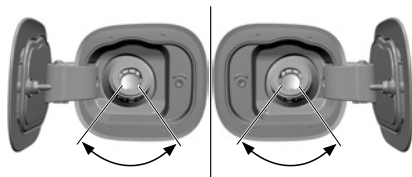


2. Press the button on the instrument panel next to the headlamp switch to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.

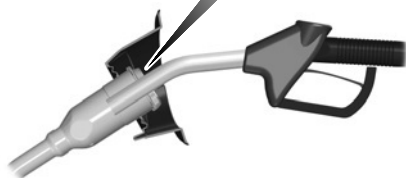
**Note:** Avoid pressing the button and blocking the fuel filler door at the same time.



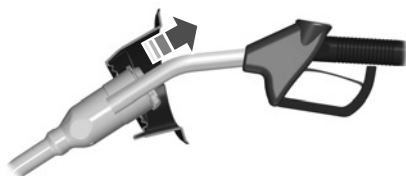
4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.



# Fuel and Refueling

Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the left side of the instrument panel again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the left side instrument panel.

**Note:** Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.



**WARNING:** Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.



**WARNING:** Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.



**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



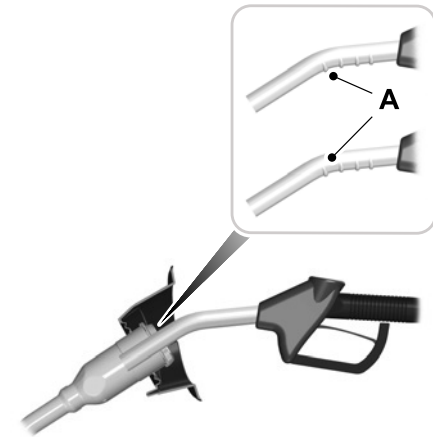
**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.



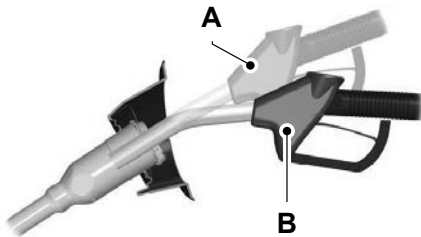
**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

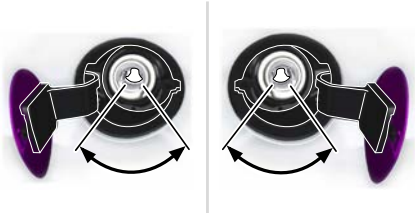
# Fuel and Refueling



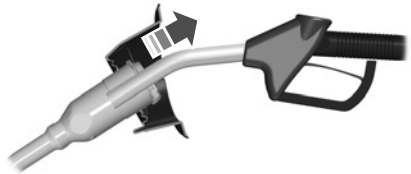
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.  
7. Close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	13.8 gal (52.2 L)

# Fuel and Refueling

## Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	16.5 gal (62.4 L)

## Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.

## FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUELANDREFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	Appears while the fuel system is depressurizing with the fuel filler door closed. Wait for the fuel system to depressurize and for the fuel filler door to unlatch.
Fuel Door Open	Appears when the fuel system has depressurized and opened the fuel filler door. Open the fuel filler door to refuel and close the fuel filler door when refueling is complete.
Fuel door ajar Close fully to avoid Check engine light	Your vehicle is equipped with a sealed fuel system that requires the fuel filler door to be closed after refueling. This warning message appears when the fuel filler door is ajar. Close the fuel filler door to avoid the Check Engine light. If you see this message and the Check Engine light illuminates, close the fuel filler door. The Check Engine light should clear within five seconds. If the Check Engine light persists, see your dealer.
Refuel Error See Manual	Appears when the fuel system fails to depressurize, or the fuel filler door fails to open. You have to use the fuel filler door manual override cable when opening the fuel door.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

## **FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)**

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

# Catalytic Converter

## WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting Precautions** (page 316).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 156).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

**Note:** Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# High Voltage Battery - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

## WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power your vehicle.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

#### Battery Shutoff



Illuminates when the high voltage battery is shut off.

#### Battery Temperature



Illuminates when the high voltage battery is above or below normal operating conditions.

#### Limited Performance



Illuminates if your vehicle has limited performance due to a cold or hot battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

#### High Voltage Hazard



Illuminates if there is a presence of a high voltage hazard.

# Automatic Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



### SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR

The selector is on the center console.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Rotate the outer ring to select a position.

**Note:** Your vehicle cannot shift from drive (D) to park (P) with a clockwise rotation. Your vehicle cannot shift from park (P) to drive (D) with a counterclockwise rotation.

3. Press the low (L) or manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.



# Automatic Transmission

## PARK (P)



**WARNING:** Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

**Note:** A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12 V battery has run out of charge.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

**Note:** Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 183).

**Note:** Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P). See **Automatic Return to Park (P)** (page 171).

**Note:** A tone could sound when you select park (P).

## REVERSE (R)



**WARNING:** Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

## NEUTRAL (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

## DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

## LOW (L) - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

In low (L) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when the accelerator pedal is released.

**Note:** We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 277).

## LOW (L)

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

**Note:** We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 277).

## MANUAL (M)

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 170).

**Note:** We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 277).

# Automatic Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



**Note:** The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

## MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS

(IF EQUIPPED)

### Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle does not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

**Note:** Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.



### Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gears.

**Note:** We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.

- Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.
- Pull the right (+) paddle to upshift.
- Pull the left (-) paddle to downshift.
- Hold the (+) paddle for a few seconds to switch the feature off.

**Note:** The feature switches off after a short period of time if you do not pull either paddle.

### Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

**Note:** We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 277).

- Shift to manual (M) or with the selector in drive (D) press the manual (M) button to switch the feature on.
- Pull the right (+) paddle to upshift.
- Pull the left (-) paddle to downshift.
- Shift to drive (D) or press the manual (M) button again to switch the feature off.

# Automatic Transmission

## TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

### How Does Temporary Neutral Mode Work

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N) for a limited time when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

**Note:** You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you stay in your vehicle with the power on.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **Automatic Return to Park (P)** (page 171).

### Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Entering Temporary Neutral Mode

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** An instructional message appears.

5. Press the low (L) or manual (M) or sports (S) button.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** The neutral (N) indicator on the selector may flash in this mode.

### Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

### How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with the driver seatbelt unfastened.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 140).

### Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if any of the following occur:

# Automatic Transmission

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

## GRADE ASSIST - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### How Does Grade Assist Work

This feature helps maintain vehicle speed when driving down a slope. The system uses a combination of engine motoring and regenerative braking to maintain vehicle speed.

**Note:** You could hear engine speed increasing and decreasing. This is normal operation.

The system activates when all the following occur:

- Your vehicle is on a downhill slope.
- The selector is in drive (D).
- You release the accelerator pedal.

### Grade Assist Indicators



## SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

**Note:** This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

**Note:** Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.

# Automatic Transmission

4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Press the low (L) or manual (M) or sport (S) button within a few seconds.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

**Note:** You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

## Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid / MERCON® ULV huile pour boîtes automatique Motorcraft® (Canada) XT-12-QULV (U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C949-A,

**Note:** Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

# Automatic Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
30min Neutral mode enabled. Not a tow mode	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered 30min neutral mode.
30min Neutral mode enabled. Not a tow mode. Press brake to unlock shifter	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered 30min neutral mode. Press brake to unlock shifter.
To stay in Neutral when exiting vehicle select L button	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
To stay in Neutral when exiting vehicle select M button	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.

Message	Description
Transmission Not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typically after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Apply Park Brake Before Exiting the Vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# All-Wheel Drive

## HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - EXCLUDING: FX4 OFF ROAD/TREMOR

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than those, could subject the vehicle to excess stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

## HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - FX4 OFF ROAD/TREMOR

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

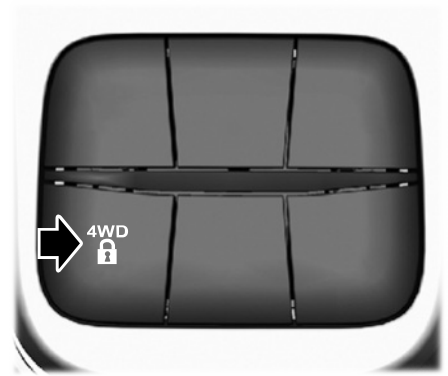
### Four-Wheel Drive Lock (If Equipped)

The four-wheel drive lock increases performance by preventing the front and rear axles from disconnecting. You can activate and deactivate the four-wheel drive lock on the fly by pressing the button on the drive mode control.

**Note:** *The four-wheel drive lock is not intended for use on dry pavement. Using the lock on dry pavement can produce excessive noise and increase tire and vehicle wear.*



The 4WD lock indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster when in use. When in standby mode, the light displays gray. When active, the light changes color.



### Rear Differential Lock (If Equipped)

This feature provides additional traction on loose or steep terrain, or should your vehicle become stuck. You can activate and deactivate the rear electronic locking differential feature while moving within the operating speed range by pressing the button on the drive mode control. The feature disengages when the vehicle speed exceeds a set value and it re-engages when the vehicle speed goes below a set value. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 232).

The rear electronic locking differential is for use in mud, rocks, sand or off-road conditions where you need maximum traction. It is not for use on dry pavement.

# All-Wheel Drive

**Note:** This feature is for off-road use only and is not for use on dry pavement. Using the rear electronic locking differential feature on dry pavement can produce excessive noise and increase tire and vehicle wear. Operating your vehicle in these conditions could subject your vehicle to excessive stress, which may result in damage not covered under your warranty.



The rear electronic locking differential indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display when in use. When the rear electronic locking differential is in standby mode, the indicator is gray. When it is active, the indicator changes color.

## Rear Electronic Locking Differential Engagement Speed and Availability

Drive Modes	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-engagement Speed
Normal	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)
Tow/Haul	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)
Slippery	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)
Eco	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)
Sport	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)
Off-Road	30 mph (48 km/h)	30 mph (48 km/h)	30 mph (48 km/h)

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Using different size tires other than the provided spare could cause system damage or disable the all-wheel drive system.



# All-Wheel Drive

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Details</b>
4WD/AWD Temporarily Disabled	The system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
4WD/AWD Temporarily Locked	The system is locking up the torque transfer clutch to help reduce clutch temperature.
4WD/AWD Off	The system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
4WD/AWD Restored	The system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
4WD/AWD Fault Service Required	The system is not properly operating. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Change 4WD/AWD Power Transfer Unit Lube	Displays when the power transfer unit fluid requires service.
4WD/AWD Power Transfer Unit Lube Set to New	Displays when you have the power transfer unit fluid changed and reset to new.
Rear Differential Lock Not Available in Current Drive Mode	The selected drive mode does not allow you to turn on the rear differential lock feature.
4WD/AWD Lock Not Required in Current Drive Mode	The selected drive mode requires your vehicle to be in four-wheel drive.
4WD/AWD Performance Reduced See Manual	Displays when the system has entered a degraded mode due to mismatched tires.

# Brakes

## BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM INDICATORS

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



If the warning lamp illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The warning lamp also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 340).

## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

# Brakes



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 179).

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

**Note:** We recommend you to use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

# Brakes

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid(U.S.) Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft®(Canada) PM-20(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M6C65-A2

## BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

## **BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Is brake dust on the wheels normal?**

Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 369).

### **Will wet driving conditions effect my braking abilities?**

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

### **Is brake noise considered normal?**

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.

### **When should you replace the brake fluid?**

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance. See **General Maintenance Information** (page 449).

# Electric Parking Brake

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake and make sure your vehicle is in park (P). Power the vehicle off and remove the keys or remote control whenever you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The electric parking brake switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 169).

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

## MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

## Pulling Away When Towing a Trailer Uphill

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.

# Electric Parking Brake

4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 317).

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 319).

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

#### Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

# Electric Parking Brake

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

### Park Brake

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Park Brake Engaged	The electric parking brake is set, the engine is running and you drive your vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the electric parking brake is released, have the system checked as soon as possible.
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h). Release the electric parking brake before continuing to drive.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Brake maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow brake service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake System Overheated	Numerous electric parking brake applies have overheated the system. Wait 2 minutes before attempting to apply again.



# Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R).

## HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 1–7 mph (2–12 km/h).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system. Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

## Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

---

**Note:** The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

**Note:** You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

### SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Reverse Brake Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 426).

2. Switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

**Note:** If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert, the reverse brake assist relies on input from only the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

### OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

### REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

## Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

---

### REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays for a few seconds when the system applies the brakes.
Reverse Brake Assist Not Available See Manual	Displays when a related system or feature error occurs. Make sure the exterior cameras are clean and not obstructed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Fault	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

# Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

---

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 186).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 250).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **What is the Rear Parking Aid** (page 207).
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 192).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 207). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 252).

- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

**Note:** *If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

# Hill Start Assist

## WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

## HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

## HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

## HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Auto Hold

## HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Press the button on the center console to turn the system On and Off.

**Note:** You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off, or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.

## USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.

2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 183).

**Note:** While auto hold is applying the brakes, if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) with your foot on the brake pedal, auto hold releases the brake. However, while auto hold is applying the brakes, if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) without your foot on the brake pedal, auto hold continues to apply the brakes. In this case, the driver pressing the brake pedal causes auto hold to release the brake.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use trailer hitching assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

## AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.

## Auto Hold

---



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

# Traction Control

## WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

## HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your wheels begin to spin, the loss of traction can compromise steering control and stability of the vehicle. The traction control system applies the brakes to individual wheels and when needed, reduces engine power at the same time to increase traction.

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The traction control system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

The button for the stability and traction control system is on the center console.

Press and release the button to switch traction control off. The stability control system remains fully active, to switch it off, press and hold the button for a few seconds, then release.

When you switch traction control off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Press the switch again to turn the traction control system back on to normal operation.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

## TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

#### System Messages



The traction control light temporarily illuminates on start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition. The light stays on if a problem occurs in the system.



The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.



# Traction Control

---

## TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

### AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
AdvanceTrac On	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The status of the AdvanceTrac sport mode after you switched it on.
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

# Stability Control

## HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

### Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying the brakes individually to one or more of the wheels and if necessary, reducing engine power.

### Roll Stability Control

Roll stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes individually to one or more wheels.

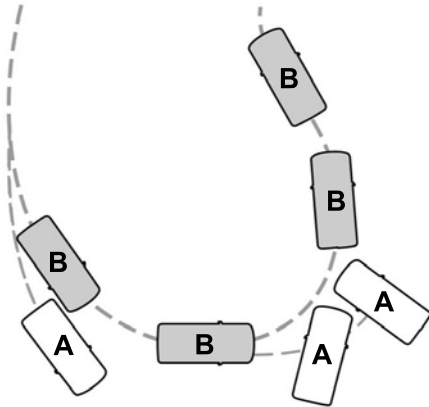
# Stability Control

## Curve Control

Curve control enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing engine power and if necessary, applying the brakes individually to one or more of the wheels.

## Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **How Does Traction Control Work** (page 192).



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

The electronic stability control system is disabled when the transmission selector is in reverse (R).



Press and hold the stability and traction control button for a few seconds, then release to switch stability control off.

Press and release the button again to turn the stability control system back to normal operation.

Traction control can be independently controlled. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 192).

# Stability Control

ESC Features				
Button Functions	Mode	Stability Control Off Light	Electronic Stability Control	Traction Control Systems
Default at start-up	Default - Traction Control On and Normal Advancetrac	On during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button momentarily pressed - single press	Traction Control Off	On	Enabled	Disabled
Button pressed and held for five seconds	AdvanceTrac Off	On	Disabled	Disabled
Button pressed when Traction Control Off or Advance Trac Off	Return to Default	Off	Enabled	Enabled

**Note:** Do not use the AdvanceTrac Off setting on public roadways.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.

- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

## STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **How Does Traction Control Work** (page 192).

# Stability Control

---

## STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STABILITY CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

#### Stability Control



It flashes when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a system error. During a system error the system switches off. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

#### Stability Control Off



Illuminates when you switch the system off. It goes out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

# Trail Control (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS TRAIL CONTROL



**WARNING:** The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

Trail control lets you focus on steering during low-speed and off-road use by controlling your vehicle's acceleration and braking to maintain the speed that you set.

You may hear a noise from the anti-lock brake system pump motor when you use the system. This is normal.

## TRAIL CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Trail control is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (32 km/h) in drive (D).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h) in reverse (R).
- The transmission is in park (P).
- The driver side door is open.
- Cruise control is on.
- Pro trailer backup assist is on.
- The parking brake is applied.

## SWITCHING TRAIL CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

The system switches off if you press the button again or exceed 40 mph (64 km/h).

## SETTING THE TRAIL CONTROL SPEED

**Note:** *The buttons are located on the steering wheel.*

Drive to your preferred speed.



Press button to increase the set current speed.



Press button to decrease the set current speed.

**Note:** *The indicator changes color.*

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

You can also decrease the set speed by braking.

**Note:** *If a set speed is set and the trail control is active and the vehicle is stopped by the brake, releasing the brake will allow the vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Pressing the brake pedal does not switch off the system.*

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

# Trail Control (If Equipped)

## TRAIL CONTROL INDICATORS



When trail control is active, the indicator illuminates green in the instrument cluster. When the system is switched on but is unavailable or in standby mode, it illuminates gray.

## TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE

### WHAT IS TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE

Trail one pedal drive allows you to accelerate and brake using only the accelerator pedal. The system assists when driving through difficult off-road terrain. Pressing the accelerator pedal down accelerates your vehicle and releasing pressure on the accelerator pedal, with your foot still on the pedal, slows your vehicle down. Releasing the accelerator pedal may allow your vehicle to come to a complete stop, some situations may require you to press the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.

### TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. If you do not apply the brakes when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Shifting into drive (D) or reverse (R) does not cause the vehicle to move.

You can press the brake pedal to increase braking. This does not turn the system off.

Trail one pedal drive could apply the parking brake when your vehicle is not moving and not in park (P).

**Note:** Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.

**Note:** Only use trail one pedal drive on slippery or loose surfaces. Using trail one pedal drive on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.

**Note:** Trail one pedal drive helps get the most from your vehicle in off road situations. On high performance trim levels, trail one pedal drive may feel more aggressive.

### TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Trail one pedal drive is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Using cruise control.
- Using trail control.
- You exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).

Releasing the accelerator pedal may allow your vehicle to come to a complete stop. Some situations may require you to press the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.

### SWITCHING TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

#### Switching Trail One Pedal Drive On



Press the trail features button to activate trail one pedal drive.

#### Switching Trail One Pedal Drive Off

Press the trail features button again to switch trail one pedal drive off.

## Trail Control (If Equipped)

If you exceed 40 mph (65 km/h) trail one pedal drive switches off.

**SET+**

Pressing either button when trail one pedal drive is active turns trail control on and places trail one pedal drive into standby mode.

**SET-**

### Switching from Trail Control to Trail One Pedal Drive



When using trail control, you can switch to trail one pedal drive by pressing the button on the steering wheel.

### TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS



When trail one pedal drive is active, the indicator displays green in the instrument cluster. When the system is switched on but is unavailable or in standby mode, it displays grey.

## TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trail 1-Pedal Drive Active Use SET Button for Trail Control	Displays when trail one pedal drive is active. Use the SET+ or SET- to switch to trail control.
Trail Control with Trail 1- Pedal Drive Off	Displays when you switch trail one pedal drive off.
Trail Control Active Use CANCEL button to resume Trail 1-Pedal Drive	Displays when trail control is active. Allows you to resume using trail one pedal drive when you press the CANCEL button.



## Trail Control (If Equipped)

### TRAIL CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### TRAIL CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Reduce Speed To Enter Trail Control	Displays when you must reduce your vehicle speed to use trail control.
Trail Control Not Available with Park Brake Applied	Displays when you must release the park brake to use trail control.
Trail Control Enabled Use SET Button to Set Speed	Displays when you successfully enabled trail control and can set a speed with the Set+ or Set- control.
Trail Control Off Driver Resume Control	Displays when a system fault has occurred when trail control was active and the driver must resume control.
Trail Control Off	Displays when the system has turned off.
Trail Control Fault See Manual	Displays when a system fault is present. See the trail control section in your Owner's Manual. See your authorized dealer for diagnosis.
Trail Control To Activate Select Gear	Displays when you must be in drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R) to use trail control.
Trail Control Not Available with Cruise Control Active	Displays when you must switch the cruise control off to use trail control.
Trail Control Not Available with Driver Door Open	Displays when you must close the driver door to use trail control.
Descent Control Now Active Press Trail Control Switch To Exit	Due to some driver action, Trail Control propulsion was turned off but the vehicle will still brake if descending a hill. The driver must press the Trail Control switch to turn the feature OFF, they can then turn it back on.
Trail Control Not Available with Seatbelt Off	Displays when you must have the seatbelt on to use trail control.

# Hill Descent Control (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS HILL DESCENT CONTROL

Hill descent control allows the driver to set and maintain vehicle speed while descending steep slopes in various surface conditions.

## HOW DOES HILL DESCENT CONTROL WORK

Hill descent control can maintain vehicle speeds on downhill slopes between 2–20 mph (3–32 km/h). Above 20 mph (32 km/h), the system remains on but the descent speed cannot be set or maintained.

**Note:** *The system does not function below 2 mph (3 km/h).*

The system requires a cool down interval after a period of sustained use. Hill descent control provides a warning in the message center when the system is about to disengage for cooling. At this time, manually apply the brakes as needed to maintain descent speed.

**Note:** *The amount of time that the system can remain active before cooling varies with conditions.*

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Hill descent control cannot control descent in all surface conditions and circumstances, such as ice or extremely steep grades. Hill descent control is a driver assist system and cannot substitute for good judgment by the driver. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

## SWITCHING HILL DESCENT CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button on the center console. The indicator illuminates when the system is active.

## SETTING THE HILL DESCENT SPEED

To increase or decrease the descent speed, press the accelerator or brake pedal. Once you reach the preferred speed remove your feet from the pedals.

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL INDICATOR



Illuminates when you switch hill descent control on.

## Hill Descent Control (If Equipped)

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### HILL DESCENT CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
For Hill Descent Reduce Speed XX MPH/km/h or Less	Your vehicle speed requirement for off-road mode entry has not been met.
For Hill Descent Select Gear	You need to select a transmission gear for hill descent mode.
Hill Descent Driver Resume Control	Hill descent control mode is deactivated and you must resume control.
Hill Descent Control Fault	A hill descent system fault is present.
Hill Descent Control Off System Cooling	The hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.
Hill Descent Control not available with Cruise Control Active	The hill descent system cannot activate while Cruise Control is actively controlling speed.

# Steering

## ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

### HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

#### Adaptive Learning

Adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering. The system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches off and you retain normal steering function. Additionally, whenever you disconnect the battery or install a new battery, drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

#### Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

**Note:** A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.

### ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10

seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

**Note:** There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

# Steering

## STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

## STEERING – WARNING LAMPS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

**Note:** *If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.*

## STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

## PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

**Note:** Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

## SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

### Muting the Audible Tone



Shift into reverse (R) and press the button on the rear view camera display screen to switch the system's audible tone on and off.

### Switching Parking Aid On and Off Long-Term

The system can be set to stay disabled in between ignition cycles.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Park Aid sensors. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 426).
2. Switch Front Sensors (Always) or Rear Sensors (Always) on or off.

## REAR PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

### REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The sensor coverage area is up to 71 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

### LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

### REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

## FRONT PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The sensor coverage area is up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

### LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

### FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

**Note:** *If the detected object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*



# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

## PARKING AID INDICATORS

### Parking Aid Indicators Shown When 360 Degree Camera Views are not Available



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color. The indicators for closer objects appear closer to the vehicle icon.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

**Note:** *If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.*

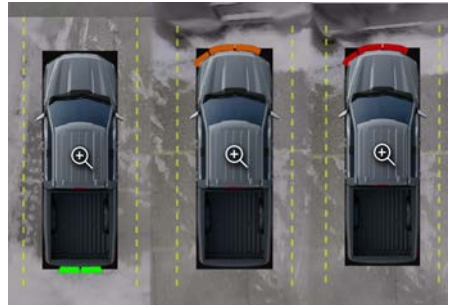
Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off in the settings menu.
- A trailer is detected. Rear parking aid disables, but front parking aid may continue to operate.
- Sensors are blocked. Front parking aid disables if any front parking sensor is blocked. Rear parking aid disables if any rear parking sensor is blocked.
- A system fault occurs.

**Note:** *If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 210).*

**Note:** *Front park aid indicators may not be available.*

### Parking Aid Indicators Shown in 360 Degree Camera Views (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

**Note:** *If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.*

Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off in the settings menu.
- A trailer is detected. Rear parking aid disables, but front parking aid may continue to operate.

- Sensors are blocked. The distance indicators appear white. Front parking aid disables if any front parking sensor is blocked. Rear parking aid disables if any rear parking sensor is blocked.
- A system fault occurs.

**Note:** *If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 210).*

### PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Message	Action
Park Aid Fault	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. You may be able to resolve by cleaning the sensors and restarting your vehicle.
Parking Sensors Blocked	Inclement weather, ice, mud, or water is blocking the sensor, causing the system to become unavailable. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Trailer Connected	An electrical trailer connection is sensed during a given ignition cycle.

# Rear View Camera

## WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).

## REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Use caution when the liftgate or tailgate is ajar. If the liftgate or tailgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the liftgate or tailgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

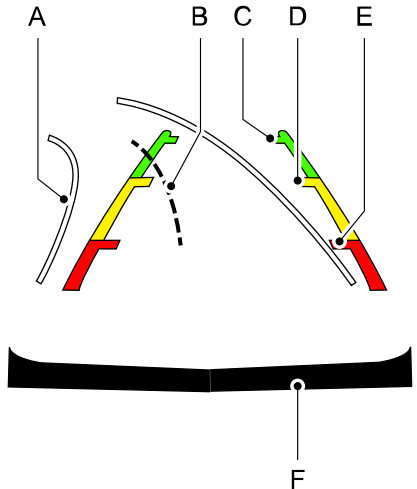
## LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera is on the tailgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.



# Rear View Camera

- A. Active guide lines.
- B. Centerline.
- C. Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D. Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E. Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F. Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

### ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

### SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Rear View Camera. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 426).
2. Switch rear view camera delay on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

# 360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras which provide visibility around your vehicle.

## HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Use caution when the tailgate is ajar. If the tailgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the tailgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

## LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

### Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the tailgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

### Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

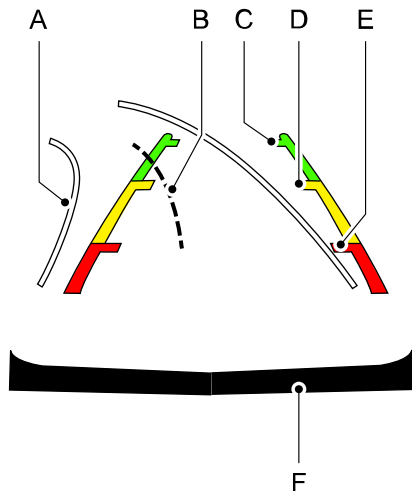
### Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking or when backing up a trailer.

## 360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

### 360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



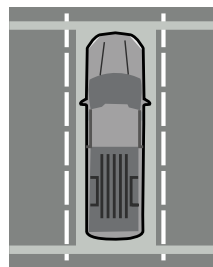
- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

### Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

### 360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

#### SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel and allows you to toggle the front camera on or off. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

## 360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

**Note:** The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button. When in reverse (R), only the rear images display when you press the button.

**Note:** The 360 degree camera system remains on when your vehicle is in motion at low speed. The rear camera views remain on at all speeds when in reverse (R).

### SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



The hitch view provides an image of the area around the tow hitch.



Trailer reverse guidance shows the sides of your truck and trailer. See **Trailer Reverse Guidance** (page 301).



Zooms in on the image and park hold is activated. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 274).



Zooms in on the 360 degree image.

**Note:** The rear normal view and hitch view are available when your vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

# Cruise Control

## WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

### Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h in metric units or 15 mph in imperial units.

## SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

### Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

## SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** The indicator changes color in the information display.

### Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**SET-**

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.



# Cruise Control

---

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

**Note:** *The system remembers the set speed.*

**Note:** *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (16 km/h) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

## CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS




Illuminates when you switch the system on.


# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)


## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.


## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.


 **WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

 **WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

## When Following a Vehicle

 **WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

### Sensor Limitations

**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

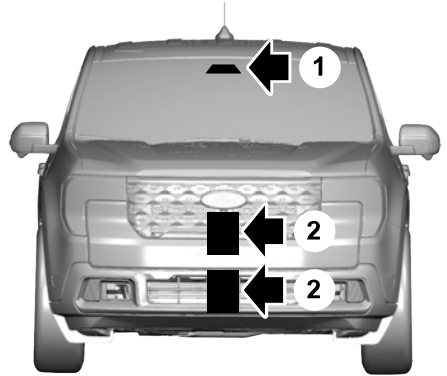
**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor (if equipped).

The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror.

The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

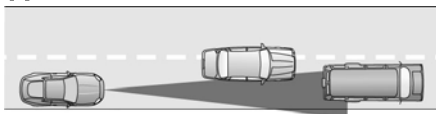
A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 230).

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

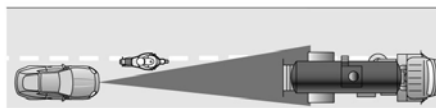
The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

## Detection issues can occur:

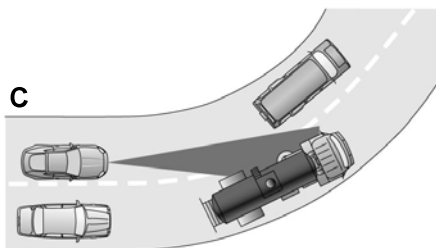
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 15 mph (20 km/h). If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 15 mph (20 km/h), adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is active or switch the vehicle off.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

**Note:** When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after adaptive cruise control stops your vehicle.
- Adaptive cruise control holds your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

### SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

**Note:** When the system is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

### Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

**SET-**

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** Your vehicle must be stopped behind another vehicle to activate adaptive cruise control from a complete stop.

### Manually Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button once the set speed is equal to the speed you prefer.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

**SET-** Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button once the set speed is equal to the speed you prefer.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the information display when the system is active.

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from Standby Mode



Press the button from standby mode to set the cruise control speed to the current vehicle speed.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

**Note:** *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

**Note:** *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on the turn signal, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (if Equipped)

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

**Note:** *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Immediately apply the brakes manually.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

**Note:** *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

## Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and message displays.

Message	Details
Stopped	Cruise control does not resume automatically when this display is active.
Press button to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move, you are prompted to press the resume button. Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Auto-Resume	Displays when on a limited access highway after following a vehicle to a complete stop. In this situation, the vehicle resumes following the lead vehicle without a button press or pressing the accelerator pedal. The system can remain in auto-resume state for approximately 30 seconds, after which it no longer automatically resumes.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the indicator remains blue, the set speed is dimmed and the lead vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 426).
2. Press Normal Cruise Control.



When you select normal cruise control the cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain the set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## LANE CENTERING

### HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane.

**Note:** *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*



# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 218).

## LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 226).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.
- The steering system detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.
- A trailer is not detected.

**Note:** *If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.*

**Note:** *If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.*

## LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 225).

Lane Centering may not be able to center your vehicle in the lane in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When a trailer is detected, the system disables lane centering. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 225).

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

**Note:** *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

## SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

**Note:** *The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 225).*

## Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 426).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Lane Centering on or off.

## LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 226).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

**Note:** *The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

## LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle.

If this alert is ignored, the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel.

If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

**Note:** *If the system detects significant inactivity, a 'Lane Centering Unavailable' message displays in the instrument cluster and lane centering is disabled until the next time you start your vehicle.*

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

## LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

## LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

## LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, some messages can appear different or not at all.

Message	Details
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane Centering Assist Not Available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume Control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST (IF EQUIPPED)


### HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK


Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 228).


There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 261).

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

### PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.

 **WARNING:** The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.

 **WARNING:** The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 218).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 232). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

**Note:** *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

## SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 426).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on or off.

## ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 426).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on.
4. Press Tolerance.
5. Adjust the slider to set the tolerance.

**Note:** *You can set tolerance for vehicle speed adjustment based on speed sign recognition only.*

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

### Speed Sign Indicator

When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

### Road Geometry Indicator

When the system detects a curve or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## Road Geometry Indicator Symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

**Note:** *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Message	Details
Front Sensor Not Aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Cruise Control Not Available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Control Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this issue.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Message	Details
	Due to the nature of sensor technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Active Adaptive Braking Off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Cruise Control Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

# Drive Mode Control

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

This feature connects multiple vehicle systems through a single interface, providing you with enhanced vehicle control and driving dynamics for different driving scenarios, terrains, weather, or various road conditions.

## HOW DOES DRIVE MODE CONTROL WORK

When a drive mode is selected it alters various electrical and mechanical systems within the vehicle to a predetermined configuration. The systems altered and features available will depend on which mode is selected.

**Note:** The electronic locking differential is available and automatically engages in some drive modes. See **How Does All-Wheel Drive Work** (page 175).

**Note:** Off-Road drive modes automatically disable the Brake Over Accelerator system to allow for two-footed driving in off-road environments. See **Brake Over Accelerator** (page 178).

**Note:** Lobo mode automatically disable the Brake Over Accelerator system to allow for two-footed driving in Track Use Only environments. See **Brake Over Accelerator** (page 178).

**Note:** The drive mode system reverts to the normal mode each time you start your vehicle. At startup, the system displays a prompt on the instrument cluster display that gives you the option to return to the last drive mode that you chose prior to shutting the vehicle off. If you select yes, the system returns to the last selected drive mode. If you select no or do not make a selection, the system remains in normal mode.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



To select a drive mode, press one of the mode buttons located on the steering wheel. The first press activates the drive mode selection menu in the instrument cluster display. Subsequent presses change the selected drive mode.

**Note:** Drive mode changes may not be available when the ignition is off.

## DRIVE MODES

### ECO - EXCLUDING: FX4 OFF ROAD/TREMOR



This mode lowers accelerator pedal responsiveness to soften driver inputs and encourage efficient driving.

Depending on your vehicle's options, adaptive cruise control is slower to return to the set speed and auto start-stop engages more often. The system decreases air conditioning output to conserve energy when set to Auto Mode.

Use this mode for fuel efficient driving which allows for an extended driving range.



# Drive Mode Control

## ECO - FX4 OFF ROAD/TREMOR



This mode decreases accelerator pedal responsiveness to soften driver inputs and encourage efficient driving.

Depending on your vehicle's options, adaptive cruise control is slower to return to the set speed and auto start-stop engages more often. The system decreases air conditioning output to conserve energy when set to auto mode.

Use this mode for fuel efficient driving which allows for an extended vehicle range.

## LOBO - LOBO



This mode increases accelerator pedal responsiveness. Traction and stability controls are set to their least invasive settings for optimal vehicle control. The system delays transmission shifting to maximize low end torque. Use this mode for Spirited closed course driving.

**Note:** *Four-wheel drive (4WD) is the default four-wheel drive mode.*

**Note:** *This mode is for closed course use only and is not for use on public roads. This feature disables brake over accelerator systems.*

## NORMAL



This mode adjusts all systems to their base settings and balances vehicle performance for all around drivability. Each time you switch your vehicle off it defaults to this mode. Use this mode for everyday driving, such as city and highway routes or commuting.

## OFF-ROAD - FX4 OFF ROAD/TREMOR



This mode lowers accelerator pedal responsiveness and delays transmission upshifts for improved vehicle control in low speed off-road environments. Traction and stability controls allow the wheels to spin to maintain vehicle momentum and clear debris from the tires for improved traction.

Depending on your vehicle's options, the system deactivates auto-start-stop.

Use this mode for driving through mud, sand, and rough, uneven off-road terrains.

**Note:** *Four-wheel drive lock (4WD) is the default four-wheel drive mode.*

**Note:** *This mode is for off-road use only. Do not use this mode when driving on pavement or packed snow. Depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection, this could cause driveline bind up and damage the system. See **All-Wheel Drive** (page 175).*

## SLIPPERY



This mode lowers accelerator pedal responsiveness, adjusts transmission shift points, and optimizes traction and stability controls to help mitigate wheel spin and maintain vehicle control in slick driving conditions.

Depending on your vehicle's options, this feature adjusts all-wheel drive control to provide optimum traction for slippery surfaces.

Use this mode for less than ideal road conditions such as snow and ice covered roads or for firm surfaces that are covered with loose or slippery materials.

# Drive Mode Control

## SPORT - EXCLUDING: LOBO/TREMOR



This mode increases accelerator pedal responsiveness and holds the transmission in lower gears longer for enhanced acceleration. The system switches the chassis controls to their sport settings. Auto-start-stop is inhibited in this mode.

Use this mode for a sportier and engaging driving experience.

## SPORT - LOBO/TREMOR



This mode increases accelerator pedal responsiveness and holds the transmission in lower gears longer for enhanced acceleration. The system switches the chassis controls to their sport settings.

Depending on your vehicle's options, this feature sets the exhaust to a louder tone, inhibits auto-start stop, increases steering torque buildup, and it adjusts the suspension for enhanced driver connectivity and responsive driving dynamics.

Use this mode for a sportier and engaging driving experience.

## TOW/HAUL



For improved vehicle operation when towing a trailer or hauling a heavy load. This mode moves upshifts to higher engine speeds to reduce the frequency of transmission shifting. It also provides downshift engine braking to assist in maintaining vehicle speed when descending a slope. Depending on your vehicle's options, the system enhances steering response to assist in controlling the vehicle when towing or hauling and auto-start stop is inhibited.

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVE MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

**Note:** *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.*

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive Mode Not Available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Drive Mode Control

---

## **DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why did the system default to normal mode?**

- If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

### **Can I switch drive modes while I am driving?**

- In most instances, you can switch drive modes while you are driving (if you maintain attention on the road), or while the vehicle is stationary. However, you should not switch the vehicle into a drive mode intended for off-road or track (LOBO) use while driving on paved, public roads. For example, while driving on a paved highway, it would be acceptable to switch from normal mode to eco mode, but not to off-road or LOBO mode.

### **How long does it take for the vehicle to switch modes after I make a selection?**

- After switching modes, the new drive mode will activate within several seconds, if all the appropriate pre-conditions are met.

### **How should I decide which drive mode to use?**

- Selecting a drive mode usually depends on the driving experience you would like to have, and the driving conditions. For example, if you want to have a more exciting on-road driving experience, you could switch into sport mode. If you find yourself driving on slick roads, you could switch into slippery mode.

## **Will drive modes impact my vehicle's fuel consumption?**

- Drive modes can have an impact on your vehicle's fuel consumption. In addition to the active mode, your driving style will also affect the fuel consumption.

# Lane Keeping System

## WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

## HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK


The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the lane of travel.


When the camera detects a drift out of the lane of travel, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the lane of travel.


The driver can select one of three modes:


- Alert (if equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid


## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.


 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 40 mph (64 km/h).

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

# Lane Keeping System

**Note:** When you select Aid or Alert and Aid mode and the system detects no steering activity for a short period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signal on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (64 km/h).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.
- Entering or exiting a tight curve when driving at high speeds.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



You can activate and deactivate the system one of two ways using either the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel or the button on the end of the turn signal.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button again.

**Note:** When switching the system on or off a message appears in the instrument cluster display to show the status.

**Note:** The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed by you.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Lane-Keeping System.
3. Press Lane-Keeping Mode.
4. Select a mode.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Lane Keeping System.
3. Press Lane Keeping Intensity.
4. Select a setting.

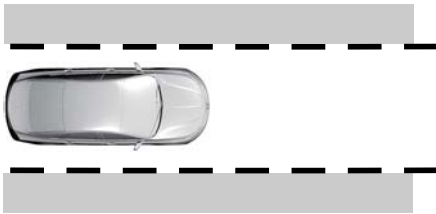
**Note:** This setting is not available in all modes.

## ALERT MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

### HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



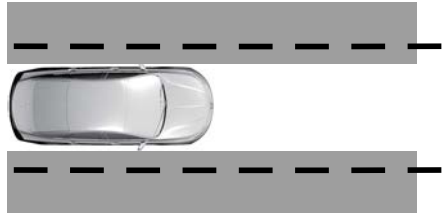
When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

## AID MODE

### WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

### HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

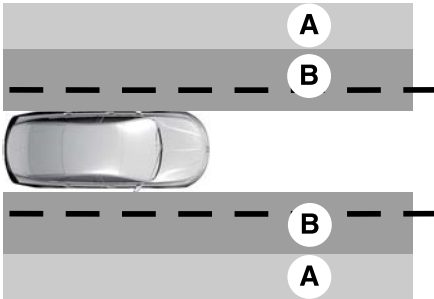
## ALERT AND AID MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far from the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

# Lane Keeping System

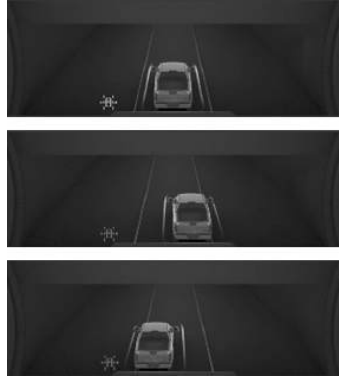
## HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK



- A Alert.
- B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicle enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings and an activation icon appear in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.*

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	Green	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

# Lane Keeping System

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST


Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help you become aware of and steer away from vehicles in your blind spot during lane changes.

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



 You can activate and deactivate the system one of two ways using either the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel or the button on the end of the turn signal.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a speed higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather obstructing the sensors.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

#### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help you become aware of and steer away from vehicles in your blind spot during lane changes.



# Lane Keeping System

When attaching a trailer, ensure you have properly set up the trailer coverage settings. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 246).

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



You can activate and deactivate the system one of two ways using either the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel or the button on the end of the turn signal.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 246).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- You have not configured the attached trailer correctly in the trailer tow menus or you attached an unsupported trailer. The system only supports certain trailer shapes and dimensions.

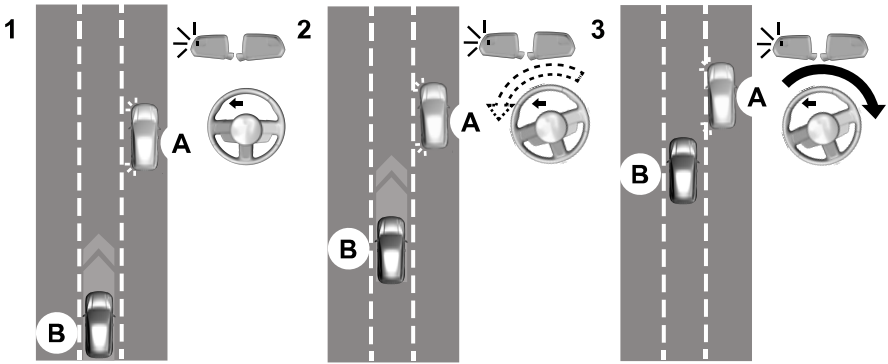
**Note:** *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if any of the above limitations are present.*

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

# Lane Keeping System

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS



**Diagram 1:** Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

**Diagram 2:** The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

**Diagram 3:** Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 245).

## Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle with the blind spot information system switched off or you have not configured the trailer.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if your blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Lane Keeping System

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

# Lane Keeping System

---

## **LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?**

- Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
- You are driving your vehicle too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
- Driving at high speeds in curves.
- The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
- Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
- Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
- Sudden offset in lane markings.
- ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
- There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
- You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
- There is standing water on the road.
- Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
- Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
- You have not calibrated the camera after a windshield replacement.

- Driving on roads with tight curves or uneven surfaces.

### **Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?**

- High cross winds are present.
- There is a large road crown.
- Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
- Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
- You changed the tires or modified the suspension.

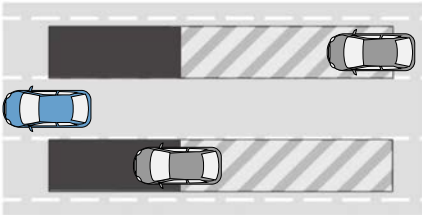
# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 59 ft (18 m) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 mph (48 km/h) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**Note:** *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone while overtaking.

**Note:** *For vehicles without the trailer coverage feature, we recommend that you switch the blind spot information system off when you attach a trailer.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.

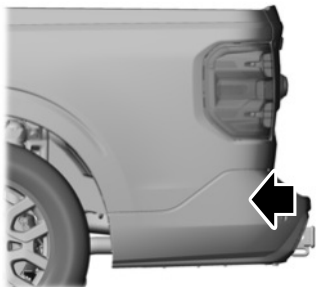
## Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

2. Switch Blind Spot Information System on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice. A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when the blind spot information system is switched off in the settings menu.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

### LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

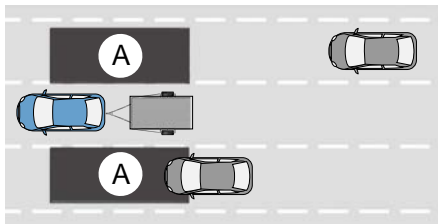
**Note:** *Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.*



If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

#### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



- A. Trailer coverage detection zone.

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer.

#### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Trailer coverage only supports conventional trailers. The system turns off if you select a fifth wheel or gooseneck trailer type.

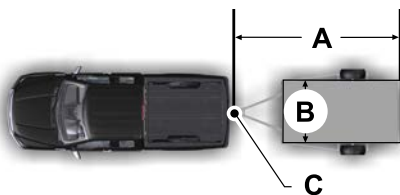
# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

Make sure the trailer width is less than or equal to 8 ft (2.4 m) and the length is less than 33 ft (10.1 m). If you input values higher, the system turns off.

Some trailers could cause a slight change in system performance:

- Large box trailers could cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructures or near parked cars. A false alert could also occur while making a 90-degree turn.
- Trailers that have a width greater than 8 ft (2.4 m) at the front and have a total length greater than 20 ft (6 m) could cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speeds.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 8 ft (2.4 m) at the front could cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clamshell or V-nose box trailers with a width greater than 8 ft (2.4 m) at the front could cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

## SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch ball.

You can set up a trailer to work with the blind spot information system through the touchscreen by using the add trailer menu.

1. Input the trailer name, then save to continue trailer setup.

**Note:** *The system only supports conventional trailers.*

2. Trailer length measurement. The trailer length is the distance between the trailer hitch ball and the rear of the trailer. The maximum length the system can support is 33 ft (10.1 m).
3. Trailer width measurement. Measure the width at the front of the trailer. It is not measured at the widest point of the trailer. The maximum width at the front of the trailer the system can support is 8 ft (2.4 m).

**Note:** *If the trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with electrical lighting, enter a length of around 3 ft (1 m). Cross traffic alert remains on for trailers with a length of 3 ft (1 m) or less.*

**Note:** *The system requires proper measurement and measure entry to properly function.*

## SELECTING A TRAILER

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the trailer set up menu appears in the touchscreen. This menu allows you to set up a new trailer or choose from a previously set up trailer. A warning message appears and the system turns off if you do not choose or add a new trailer.

**Note:** *The warning message may not appear until your vehicle reaches 22 mph (35 km/h).*

# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side from which the vehicle is approaching. If you turn the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Blind Spot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blind Spot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.
Blind Spot Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to your vehicle under any of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Your vehicle does not have blind spot information system with trailer coverage.</li><li>- You switch the blind spot information system off through the touchscreen.</li><li>- Your trailer exceeds the limits for the system. Only appears if your vehicle has blind spot information system with trailer coverage.</li></ul>



## Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

---

**Note:** *When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system OFF. If the system does not automatically turn OFF, manually switch the blind spot information system OFF. If your vehicle has the blind spot information system with trailer coverage, the system prompts you to set up a trailer that allows the feature to function, if your trailer meets the requirements of the system.*

# Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

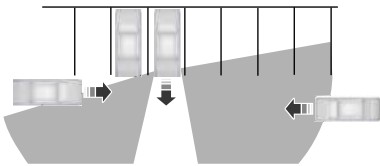
The system is designed to alert you of road users and traffic objects approaching from the rear sides and from behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects approaching road users or traffic objects. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

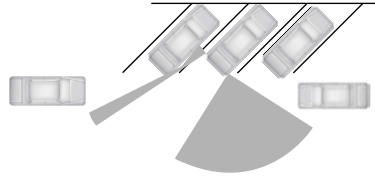
**Note:** *There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. You can override this by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

## HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect road users or traffic objects approaching above a minimum speed of 5 mph (8 km/h). Coverage can decrease when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

**Note:** *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Take action as soon as you notice the system applying the brakes in order to remain in control of your vehicle, the system does not do this for you.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection, for example, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.



**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may cause unexpected system behavior. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, fuel containers, bumper covers or any other device may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent unexpected system behavior.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

**Note:** *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

**Note:** *You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.*

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Traffic objects approach at speeds less than 5 mph (8 km/h) or greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).

## Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

- Your vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.
- If you switch the traction system off, cross traffic alert does not apply the brakes.

**Note:** The system does not alert for small stationary and moving objects.

### Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer to vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 3 ft (1 m).
- You set the trailer length to 3 ft (1 m) in the touchscreen.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer greater than 3 ft (1 m). For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

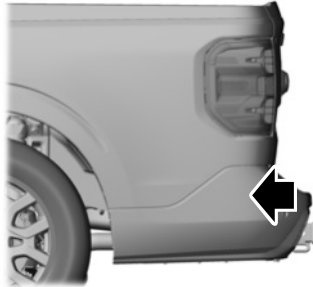
### SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Cross Traffic Alert.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

### LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear fascia on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance. If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an alert indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the touchscreen to show from which side the vehicle is approaching.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

**Note:** In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross Traffic Alert Applying Brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

**Note:** If your vehicle has reverse brake assist See **Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages** (page 187).

# Pre-Collision Assist

## WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. The system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision if your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian or cyclist within your driving path.

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake support.
3. Automatic emergency braking.



**Alert:** When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

**Brake Support:** The system helps reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system may apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

**Automatic Emergency Braking:** Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

**Note:** If the pre-collision assist alerts are too frequent or disturbing, you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity results in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 255).

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

# Pre-Collision Assist



**WARNING:** The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.



**WARNING:** Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.



**WARNING:** Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Automatic emergency braking may activate when a collision is imminent. The system cannot prevent all crashes, but may reduce crash severity. Do not test automatic emergency braking or forward collision warning. Testing this system must only be conducted by authorized test facilities using specialized equipment. Do not use automatic emergency braking to replace normal braking for any reason. Relying on automatic emergency braking to stop your vehicle may cause an unexpected accident which could lead to serious injury or death.*

**Note:** *The system does not detect animals.*

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 257).

The system is active at 3 mph (5 km/h) and above.

**Note:** *The pre-collision assist system automatically disables if your vehicle has the following drive modes and you select four-wheel drive low or manually disable AdvanceTrac™ and rock crawl mode.*

**Note:** *Brake support and automatic emergency braking can detect other vehicles up to the maximum speed of your vehicle.*

# Pre-Collision Assist

## Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system can have reduced performance in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or when the system cannot distinguish them from a group.

## Cyclist Detection Limitations

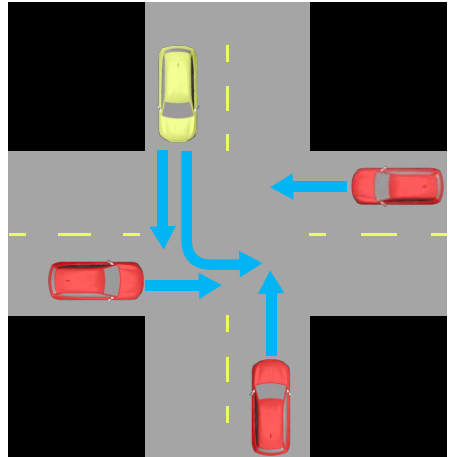
Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).

Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system can have reduced performance in situations where cyclists are fast-moving, partly obscured, have a complex background, or where the system cannot distinguish them from a group.

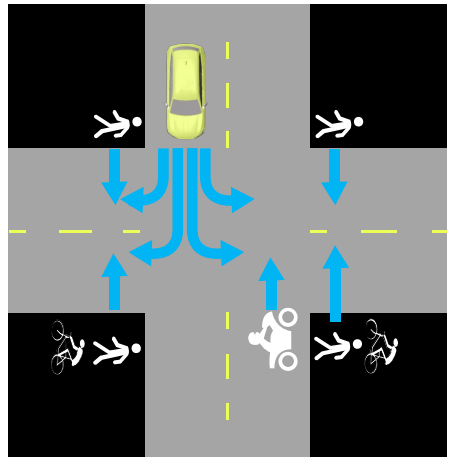
## Intersection Assist

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 19 mph (30 km/h). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 19 mph (30 km/h). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 40 mph (65 km/h).

**Note:** In the following intersection scenarios, your vehicle is represented in yellow.



The previous image shows potential intersection scenarios from the perspective of the yellow vehicle. The system may detect the red vehicles if you encounter them within the appropriate detection speed.





# Pre-Collision Assist

The previous image shows potential motorcycle, bicycle, and pedestrian intersection scenarios from the perspective of the yellow vehicle. The system may detect these threats if you encounter them within the appropriate detection speed.

## Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

This feature expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 19 mph (30 km/h).

## SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

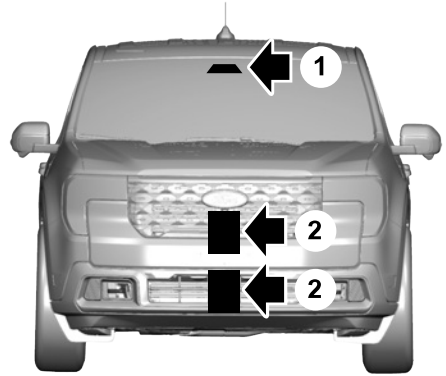
1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

## Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

You can adjust additional feature settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu.

**Note:** *Automatic emergency braking switches on every time you switch the ignition on.*

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor (if equipped).

**Note:** *The radar sensor is found in either of the displayed locations depending on your vehicle's configuration.*

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, something is obstructing the radar signals or camera images. The radar sensor is behind the fascia cover in the center of the upper or lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 259).

**Note:** *Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Repair any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view.*

# Pre-Collision Assist

---

**Note:** If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

**Note:** If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could display in the information display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor successfully recalibrates.

## FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

### WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

### ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Alert Sensitivity.
4. Select a setting.

## AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help to reduce impact damage or completely avoid the crash.

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Auto Emergency Braking.
4. Switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when automatic emergency braking is switched off using the settings menu.

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

### WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

# Pre-Collision Assist

**Note:** Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 254).

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

## SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.

2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Evasive Steering Assist.
4. Switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you start your vehicle.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



A telltale illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

**Note:** If the telltale illuminates without a corresponding information message, make sure the setting for automatic emergency braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off** (page 258). No action is needed unless an information message appears. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 254).

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Pre-Collision Assist

---

## **PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **What should I do if the windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed?**

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

### **What if the windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?**

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

### **What should I do if the surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed?**

- Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

### **What if the surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?**

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

### **Can weather or road conditions interfere with the radar signals?**

- Yes, weather such as heavy rain, spray or fog as well as water, snow or ice on the surface of the road can interfere with the radar signals. In these situations, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

### **What if the radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact?**

- Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

# Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

Speed sign recognition detects speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit. Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display.

## HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Speed sign recognition uses the front windshield camera to detect speed signs.

If your vehicle has speed sign recognition with Map Data, stored speed sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.



**WARNING:** Not all traffic signs can be recognized by the system and displayed correctly.

**Note:** Always fit our original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

Speed sign recognition may not detect the correct speed due to:

- Construction zones.
- Outdated map data.
- Incorrect recognition of speed limits by the sensor of signs on parallel roads or exit ramps.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty, or distorted signs.

**Note:** The system may not detect all speed signs and may incorrectly read signs.

# Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, it appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** Sign indicator image may vary based on your vehicle's display type.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

From the driver assistance menu, press Speed Limit Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 426).

You can adjust the following settings:

- Switch the speed warning on or off.
- Set the speed limit tolerance (if equipped).



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traffic Sign Reduced Performance See Manual	The traffic sign data provided by the Map Data is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have the system checked as soon as possible.

# Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)

---

## **SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does the speed limit change without any sign on the road?**

- The speed limit changes due to the speed limit data stored in the map data.

### **Why does speed sign recognition show a wrong speed limit?**

- The system shows a wrong speed limit due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the speed limits by the camera.

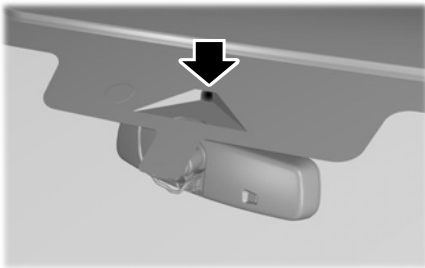
# Driver Alert

## WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

Driver alert determines your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors using the front windshield camera.



## DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.

## DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert may not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).



# Driver Alert

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Driver Alert.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

## DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an issue, for example, the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

**Note:** *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

## DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest soon.

# Load Carrying

## LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

# Load Carrying

Load carrying can also impact other systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 225). See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 218).

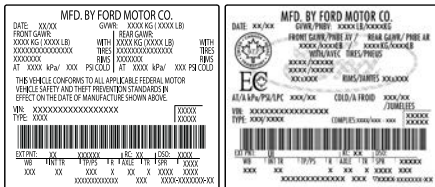
**Note:** *If your vehicle comes with bed rails, we recommend that you evenly distribute the load and do not exceed the total maximum load capacity of 150 lb (68 kg).*

## USING A SLIDE-IN CAMPER

We do not recommend using your pickup for carrying a slide-in camper.

## LOCATING THE SAFETY COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATION LABELS

### Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



The Safety Compliance Certification label is located on the door pillar, door latch post, or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING

### GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT RATING

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS COMBINED WEIGHT RATING


Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR) is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should

# Load Carrying

be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 280).

## CALCULATING PAYLOAD

### Tire and Loading Label Information Example:




**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL: 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3

The combined weight of occupants, and cargo should never exceed **385 kg or 850 lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
SPARE	NONE	NONE	



**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**  
**RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT**

SEATING CAPACITY / NOMBRE DE PLACES TOTAL: 5 FRONT AVANT: 2 REAR ARRIERE: 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **396 kg or 875 lbs.**  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE / PNEU	SIZE / DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE / PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
REAR ARRIERE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

## CALCULATING THE LOAD LIMIT

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

## Load Carrying

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

### **Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity**

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately

30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times$

## Load Carrying

---

$220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

# Pickup Bed

## PICKUP BED PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not allow people or animals in truck beds that have modifications, such as bed covers or slide-in campers, when the engine is running. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**WARNING:** Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINTS

### PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS

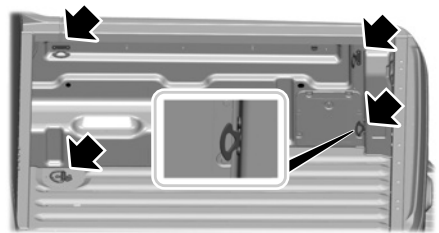
**WARNING:** Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached

## LOCATING THE PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINTS

### Pickup Bed Anchor Points

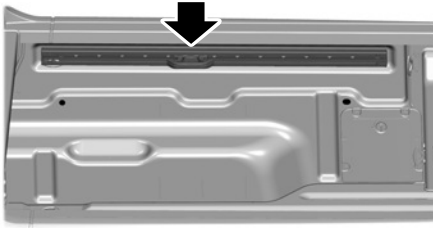
The pickup bed anchor points are in each corner of the pickup bed.



### Adjustable Bed Rail (If Equipped)

Sliding cleat tie-downs are on each side of the pickup bed.

# Pickup Bed



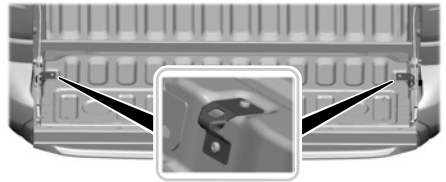
**Note:** Make sure that you properly balance and secure the cargo load. Failure to do this can cause cargo instability and damage to the box.

**Note:** Do not secure cargo with tie downs connected from the tie down brackets to the cargo box tie downs. This could cause the tailgate to detach.

## TAILGATE ANCHOR POINTS

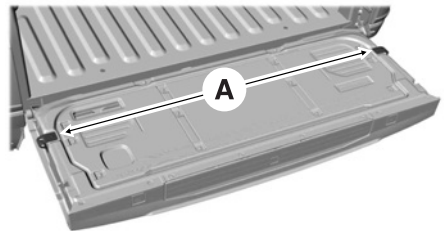
### LOCATING THE TAILGATE ANCHOR POINTS

The tailgate anchor points are located at each side of the tailgate.

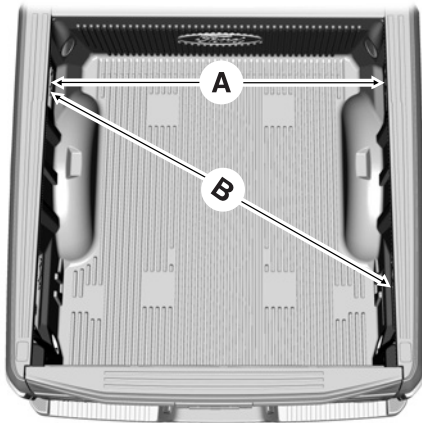


**Note:** You could damage the tailgate if you overload the tie downs.

### TAILGATE ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES



### PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES



A	B
Maximum force between directly opposed cleats 276 lb (125 kg).	Maximum force between diagonally opposed cleats 600 lb (272 kg).

**Note:** You could damage the pickup bed walls if you overload the tie downs.



# Pickup Bed

---

<b>A</b>
----------

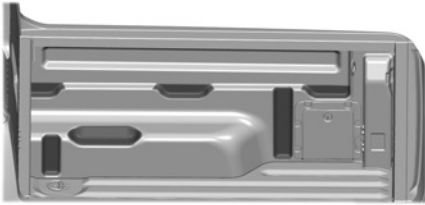
The maximum force between the tailgate anchor points 400 lb (181 kg).
---

**Note:** *Do not secure cargo from a pickup bed anchor point to a tailgate anchor point. This could cause the tailgate to detach.*

## PICKUP BED SLOTS

### LOCATING THE PICKUP BED SLOTS

Slots in the pickup bed provide location points for lumber to support various loads.



# Connecting a Trailer

## CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).

Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.

See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

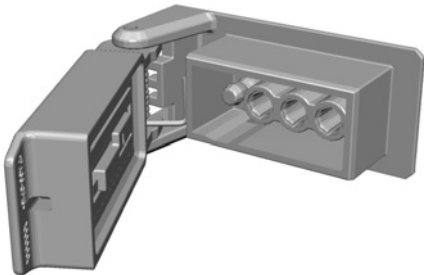
When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Account for the trailer coupler weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Do not exceed the load limits. See **Calculating the Load Limit** (page 268).

## CONNECTING A TRAILER

### Trailer Towing Connector (If Equipped)



When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

**Note:** *Install the waterproof protection cap back onto the trailer towing connector whenever it is not in use. This helps to prevent water damage and trailer towing connector malfunction.*

### Trailer Lamps



**WARNING:** Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

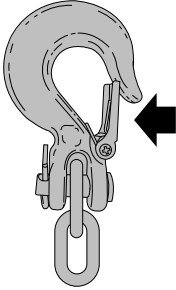
### Safety Chains

Install trailer safety chains to the trailer hitch as recommended by the manufacturer. Cross the chains under the trailer coupler and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

# Connecting a Trailer

---

**Note:** Do not attach safety chains to the bumper. Connect the safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the trailer hitch.



If the trailer safety chain hook has a latch, make sure to fully close the latch.

## Trailer Power Feed

This feature allows the trailer's battery to charge under the following situations:

- Your vehicle has a 7-pin connector.
- Your vehicle is in the accessory or run position.
- Your vehicle's battery voltage is above 12.5 volts and the trailer's battery can hold a charge.

The trailer power feed feature allows for a 12 volt power output on a 7-pin connector when the system detects a trailer.

**Note:** The trailer power feed provides a maximum output of 15 amps.

**Note:** Demand of more than 15 amps of power on the trailer power feed may damage the trailer lighting module.

# Connecting a Trailer


## CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING


### CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES


<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Trailer Disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection disconnecting, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Wiring Fault	The system detects an electrical fault in the trailer brake circuit. If this message appears without a trailer connected, see your authorized dealer. If a trailer is connected, have the trailer wiring checked.
Trailer Battery Not Charging See Manual	The vehicle battery voltage is low, your trailer battery is below 8 volts, or there is a fault with your trailer battery.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	The system detects a short in the trailer wiring. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Left Turn Lamps Fault Check Lamps	The left-hand trailer turn lamps require service.
Trailer Right Turn Lamps Fault Check Lamps	The right-hand trailer turn lamps require service.
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Perform a trailer brake and trailer light check if possible. If the message persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.


# Towing a Trailer


## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

 **WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

## TRAILER BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

 **WARNING:** Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

# Towing a Trailer

---

Certain states require functioning trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight.

Ford Motor Company recommends separate functioning brake systems for trailers weighing more than 1,500 lb (680 kg) when loaded.

## TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

The vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 225). See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 218).

**Note:** *Your vehicle could have reduced performance when operating at high altitudes and when heavily loaded or towing a trailer. When driving at elevation, to match driving performance as perceived at sea level, reduce gross vehicle weight and gross combination weight by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation.*

## LOADING YOUR TRAILER

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight. The trailer tongue weight should never exceed 10% of the maximum towing capacity.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

## TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Periodically inspect these components during and after any towing operation.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight.

# Towing a Trailer

---

Your vehicle may have a temporary or conventional spare tire. A temporary spare tire is different in diameter or width, tread-type, or is from a different manufacturer than the road tires on your vehicle. Consult information on the tire label or Safety Compliance label for limitations when using.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off when you are towing on long, steep slopes.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not continuously apply the brakes, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission has Grade Assist or Tow/Haul, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.

- Your vehicle has AdvanceTrac with roll stability control. When towing a trailer, additional loads could cause the AdvanceTrac system to engage during cornering maneuvers. Reduce cornering speeds to make sure that you can maintain control of the vehicle and trailer if the AdvanceTrac system engages.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and gradually brake.
- Avoid parking on a slope. However, if you must park on a slope, turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow, set the parking brake, place the transmission in park (P) and place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels.

**Note:** *Chocks are not included with your vehicle.*

## LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding 6 in (15 cm) could allow water to enter vehicle components, causing internal damage to the components and affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

**Note:** *Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water.*

# Towing a Trailer

---

**Note:** Disconnect the trailer wiring connector before backing the trailer into the water.

**Note:** Reconnect the trailer wiring connector after removing the trailer from the water.

## TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

### RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

<b>Market</b>	<b>Website</b>
United States of America	<a href="https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/">https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/</a>
Canada (English)	<a href="https://www.fordpro.ca/en-ca/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/">https://www.fordpro.ca/en-ca/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/</a>
Canada (French)	<a href="https://www.fordpro.ca/fr-ca/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/">https://www.fordpro.ca/fr-ca/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/</a>



# Towing a Trailer

---

## WHAT IS THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT

The maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow.

## CALCULATING THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT FOR YOUR VEHICLE

1. Start with the gross combined weight rating for your vehicle model and axle ratio.
2. Subtract all of the following that apply to your vehicle:
  - Vehicle curb weight.
  - Hitch hardware weight, for example a draw bar, ball, locks or weight distributing hardware.
  - Driver weight.
  - Passenger weight.
  - Payload, cargo and luggage weight.
  - Aftermarket equipment weight.

This equals the maximum loaded trailer weight for this combination.

**Note:** *The trailer tongue load is considered part of the payload for your vehicle. Reduce the total payload by the final trailer tongue weight.*

**Note:** *Consult an authorized dealer to determine the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle if you are not sure.*

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER

The trailer brake controller assists in smooth and effective trailer braking based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

## INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use the integrated trailer brake controller to properly adjust the trailer brakes and check all connections before towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

- Only use the manual control lever for proper adjustment of the gain during trailer setup. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of the trailer or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The trailer brake controller does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of the trailer and tow vehicle.
- The trailer brake controller is only a factory-installed or dealer-installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the controller due to misuse or customer installation.

**Note:** Do not attempt removal of the trailer brake controller without consulting the Workshop Manual. Damage to the unit may result.

## USING THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition. Check for normal function and proper adjustment. See your trailer dealer if necessary.

**Note:** An authorized dealer can diagnose the trailer brake controller to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred. Your vehicle warranty does not cover issues with your trailer.

2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** Select default mode if the trailer has surge brakes, or no brakes at all. The system has no effect on the braking performance of the trailer in either of these cases.

- Note:** The system does not support the trailer braking function if it is connected by a four-pin connector.
3. When you plug in a trailer with electric or electric-over-hydraulic brakes, a message confirming connection appears in the information display.
4. Use the gain adjustment to find the desired starting point. A gain setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.

**Note:** Use the following steps to adjust the gain setting whenever road, weather and trailer, or vehicle loading conditions, change from when you initially set the gain.

5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface and squeeze the manual control lever completely.

## Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

- If the trailer wheels lock up, indicated by squealing tires, reduce the gain setting. If the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the gain setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the gain setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock-up may not be attainable even with the maximum gain setting of 10.

**Note:** Only perform this procedure at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

**Note:** The trailer brake controller reduces output at vehicle speeds below 11 mph (18 km/h) so that trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using your vehicle's brake pedal, not the controller.

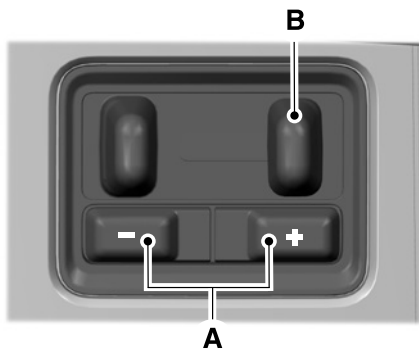
**Note:** Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other. Changing the gain setting on the controller does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brakes whether you attach a trailer or not.

**Note:** With the proper electrical connection, pressing your vehicle's brake pedal or using the manual control lever illuminates both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

**Note:** When you switch the engine off, the controller output disables and the display and module shut down. The controller module and display turn on when you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** The system suspends stop/start when you attach a trailer with electric or electric over hydraulic brakes to your vehicle.

### Adjusting the Trailer Brake Gain



- Use the gain adjustment (+) and (-) buttons to increase or decrease the gain setting to the desired starting point. The trailer brake controller allows adjustment of brake gain from 0% to 100% in 5% increments.
- Use the manual slider to directly apply trailer braking.

**Note:** Adjust the gain setting before using the trailer brake controller for the first time.

**Note:** Set the gain to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while making sure the trailer wheels do not lock when using the brakes. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

**Note:** The system saves the setting adjustments when you select a trailer profile.

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

---

## ADJUSTING THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER MODE

Select the correct integrated trailer brake controller mode option using the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Trailer brake gain settings are saved to the active trailer profile.*

### Selecting the Trailer Brake Type

1. Press **Default** for trailers with electromagnetic drum brake systems or press **Electric over Hydraulic** for trailers with electrically actuated hydraulic brake systems.

2. Press **Save**.

### Selecting the Trailer Brake Effort

1. Select a setting for your trailer.

**Note:** *The default value is **Low** and is the recommended setting for most trailers. Select a different setting if your trailer's brakes require more initial voltage, or you prefer more aggressive trailer braking.*

2. Press **Save**.

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

## INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer Connected	The system detects a trailer is connected during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Disconnected	The system detects the trailer is disconnected during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Wiring Fault	The system detects an electrical fault in the trailer brake circuit. If this message appears without a trailer connected, see your authorized dealer. If a trailer is connected, inspect and repair the trailer wiring.
Trailer Brake Gain: {trailer gain value:#0.0}	Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake.
Trailer Brake Gain: {trailer gain value:#0.0} No Trailer	Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake when you do not have a trailer connected.
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Perform a trailer brake and trailer light check if possible. If the message persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Battery Not Charging See Manual	The trailer battery voltage is too low to charge.

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

---

## **INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **How do I determine if there is an issue with the wiring on my vehicle?**

- A message displays accompanied by a single tone, when no trailer is connected. This indicates that the issue is between the trailer brake controller and the 7-pin connector at the bumper.

### **How do I determine if there is an issue with the wiring on my trailer?**

- A message only displays with a trailer connected. Consult your trailer dealer for assistance.

# Trailer Sway Control

---

## HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer Sway Reduce Speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

2. Press settings.
3. Switch Trailer Sway Control.

The system turns on each time you start your vehicle.

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

**Note:** *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

**Note:** *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

## SWITCHING TRAILER SWAY CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Towing.

# Trailer Hitching Assistance (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS TRAILER HITCHING ASSISTANCE

Trailer hitching assistance helps the driver align the vehicle hitch ball to a trailer coupler.

## HOW DOES TRAILER HITCHING ASSISTANCE WORK

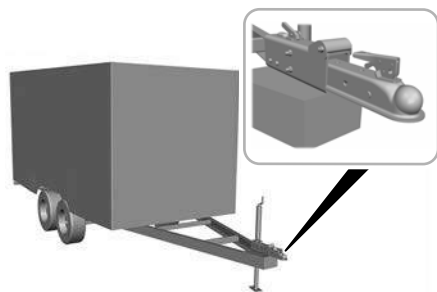
Trailer hitching assistance uses the following to detect your trailer:

- Rear view camera.
- Radar.
- Parking aid sensors.
- External rear lighting.

This feature also controls the following to align the hitch ball with the trailer coupler:

- Steering.
- Shifting.
- Braking and acceleration.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance. Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, tape, repair compound or other objects.



## TRAILER HITCHING ASSISTANCE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system is not designed to detect cyclists, motorcyclists, pedestrians or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**Note:** Fifth wheel and gooseneck trailers are not supported.

**Note:** Trailer hitching assistance only works with conventional trailers, couplers and hitch balls.

**Note:** The hitch ball must be properly installed on the vehicle for the system to function as intended. An improperly installed hitch ball could result in damage to your vehicle or trailer.

**Note:** Certain aftermarket modifications such as oversized tires or lift kits could make trailer hitching assistance fail or not work as intended.

**Note:** Keep the sensors and camera free from snow, ice and dirt.

**Note:** Clean the camera lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.



# Trailer Hitching Assistance (If Equipped)

## TRAILER HITCHING ASSISTANCE LIMITATIONS

The system could not function, or could function with reduced performance, during the following:

- When using trailer hitching assistance in tall grass and weeds.
- When safety chains, cables or wiring are dangling near the coupler.
- When using trailer hitching assistance on slippery surfaces.
- When using hitches that raise the hitch ball more than 4 in (10 cm), lower the hitch ball by more than 6 in (16 cm) or extend the hitch ball away from the vehicle more than 12 in (30 cm).
- When using hitches that are less than 10 in (25 cm) from the ground.
- When using objects taller than 8 in (20 cm), such as large blocks under the jack stand.
- When you park the trailer on surfaces that are similar in color to the trailer coupler and hitch ball.
  - A black coupler or hitch ball over a dark asphalt surface.
  - A light color coupler or hitch ball over a light concrete surface.
- When there are low or no light sources, such as at night.
- The system may not work accurately during cold weather conditions. If this occurs, allow the vehicle to reach optimal temperature to resume operation.

For additional information, refer to the Ford Support website.

## SWITCHING TRAILER HITCHING ASSISTANCE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch the system on and off. You can also switch the system off through the touchscreen.

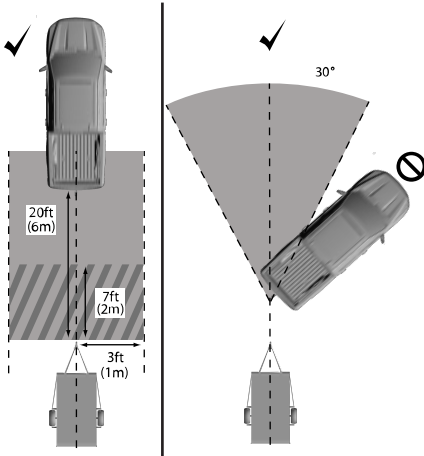
## USING TRAILER HITCHING ASSISTANCE

Before switching on the system, make sure that your vehicle:

- Is within 20 ft (6 m) of the trailer and no closer than 7 ft (2 m).
- Is less than a 30° approach angle to the trailer.
- Is within 3 ft (1 m) of the front of the trailer facing the same direction.
- Is clear of obstacles or other vehicles within 6 ft (1.8 m) on either side of your vehicle or the trailer.
- Has the tailgate in the closed position.

# Trailer Hitching Assistance (If Equipped)

- Has radar, sensor, and camera free from snow, ice and dirt.
- Has parking aid sensors switched on in the touchscreen.



1. Press the Pro Trailer button.


**Note:** Press the Pro Trailer button to switch the system on and off.





2. When asked if a trailer is connected, select no on the touchscreen to activate the system.
3. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Pressing the Pro Trailer button other than when prompted turns off the system.

## TRAILER HITCHING ASSISTANCE INDICATORS

 The white indicator represents the system searching for the trailer. Continue moving the vehicle until the trailer coupler is inside this indicator. The indicator turns green once the trailer coupler is in the correct position.

 The bracket shows you the estimated location of your trailer.

 The yellow indicator represents that you have positioned your vehicle too close to the trailer and you need to pull away from the trailer until the indicator turns green.

## Trailer Hitching Assistance Audible Indicators

A tone sounds as part of normal operation of the system to alert the driver that an action needs to be taken or an event has been completed.

# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE

Trailer backup assistance utilizes the control knob on the instrument panel to help you steer a trailer. Turn the control knob in the direction you want the trailer to go and the system steers the vehicle.

## HOW DOES TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE WORK

Trailer backup assistance uses a sticker to detect the trailer angle relative to the towing vehicle and provides instructions, graphics and camera views on the touchscreen.

## TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. If you do not apply the brakes when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

**Note:** *The system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always be aware of your vehicle and trailer combination, and the surrounding environment.*

**Note:** *The system does not detect or prevent your vehicle or trailer from making contact with obstacles in the surrounding environment.*

**Note:** *The front end of your vehicle swings out when changing the direction of the trailer.*

**Note:** *In certain conditions, the trailer could turn faster or the trailer angle could increase more than anticipated. Always monitor the clearance between the trailer and vehicle and the surroundings.*

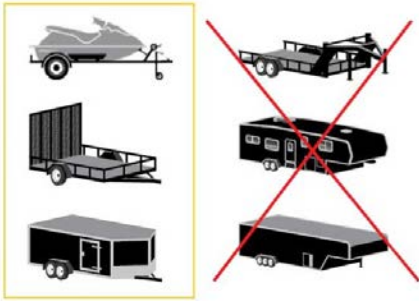
## SETTING UP THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE FOR A CONVENTIONAL TRAILER

### CONFIGURING THE TRAILER

You must configure a trailer in the system to use trailer backup assistance. This is a one-time setup process and the system saves the trailer information for the next time you use that trailer.

The system only works with conventional trailers. It does not work with other types including fifth-wheel and gooseneck. The following illustration shows examples of conventional trailers on the left-hand side.

# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)



Make sure that the trailer and your vehicle are in line with each other. You can do this by putting the transmission in drive (D) and pulling straight forward.

## Positioning the Trailer

Hitch the trailer to your vehicle and connect the electrical wiring harness. Check to make sure that the wiring is working. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 274).



Park your vehicle and hitched trailer on a level surface.

For best results, make sure that your trailer rides level with the ground when you hitch your vehicle. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 274).

## Configuring the Trailer in the Touchscreen

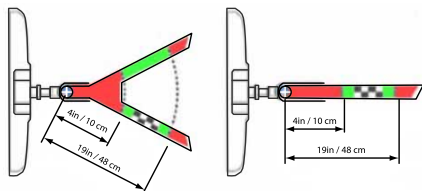


1. Press the button to switch the system on.
2. Press Yes to indicate that a trailer is connected.
3. Press Add Trailer on the touchscreen.
4. Follow the directions on the touchscreen to enter the trailer name and trailer type, then proceed to the sticker setup.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

### APPLYING THE TRAILER REVERSING AID STICKER

Place the sticker in an area visible by the rear view camera. The entire sticker must be within 4–19 in (10–48 cm) from the center of the hitch ball, as shown in the following illustration.



Use the supplied sticker placement card, a tape measure and pen to carefully mark the area to attach the sticker. Make sure the entire sticker is within the green zone between the two arcs or distance markers on the diagram, and is also visible in the rear view camera display.

Once you have found the correct location, place the sticker.

**Note:** Make sure nothing obstructs the rear view camera's view of the sticker such as a jack handle or wiring.

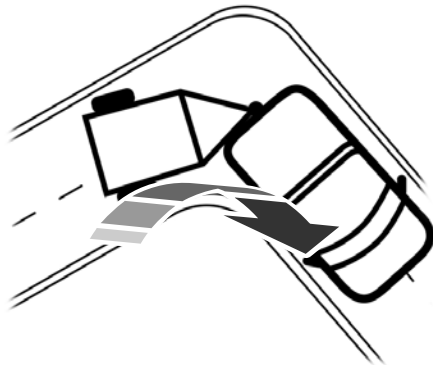
**Note:** Position the sticker on a flat, dry and clean horizontal surface. For best results, apply the sticker when temperatures are above 32°F (0°C).

**Note:** Do not move stickers after placing them. Do not reuse any stickers if removed.

**Note:** You can purchase additional stickers through your authorized dealer.

### CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

Calibrating the system requires driving forward and turning left or right. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to complete the calibration process.



**Note:** To calibrate the system, you need an area where you can safely drive forward and turn left or right. An open parking lot is an ideal place to perform the calibration.

**Note:** Keep the steering wheel straight when instructed to by the touchscreen. If the steering wheel is in a turned position during this instruction, the calibration pauses.

**Note:** During calibration, the system determines the trailer length. The system supports trailer lengths of 6–33 ft (1.85–10.05 m) distance from the hitch point to the center of the axle or axles. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate / tailgate surface to hitch ball center measurement of 9–18 in (23–46 cm) when installed. Do not attempt to use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

**Note:** The touchscreen shows if you are going too slow or fast. Calibration pauses if the speed is outside the required range of 2–9 mph (4–15 km/h).

**Note:** You need to complete at least a 90° turn, longer trailers could require a 180° turn. Camera trailer tracking requires the system to locate the hitch ball as well as determine the trailer length. Some trailers could require you to drive straight then turn multiple times before calibration completes. The touchscreen provides instructions and notifies you when calibration completes.

**Note:** For best results, do not calibrate the system at night when calibrating the system with the sticker.

### SWITCHING TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE ON AND OFF



Press the button and use the touchscreen to select the connected trailer.

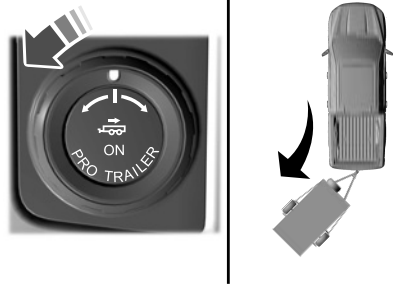
**Note:** A trailer must be configured to use trailer backup assistance.

**Note:** If you use the steering wheel when using trailer backup assistance, the system turns off and a message displays in the touchscreen.

**Note:** If the trailer was connected just prior to turning the system on, you may need to drive forward to initialize the system. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to activate the system.

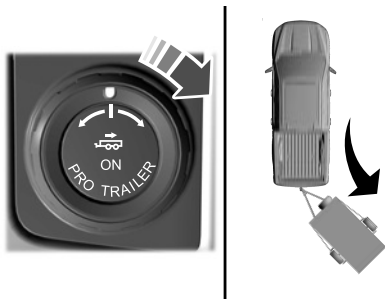
### USING THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE CONTROLLER

Use the control knob to steer the trailer. Take your hands off the steering wheel and turn the control knob instead. The control knob acts as the steering control for the trailer.

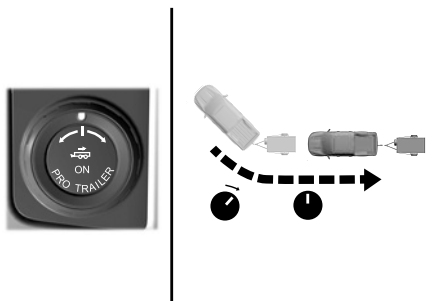


Turn and hold counterclockwise to make the trailer go left.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)



Turn and hold clockwise to make the trailer go right.



Release the knob when the trailer is moving in the direction you want.

**Note:** *The more you turn the knob, the sharper the trailer turns.*

**Note:** *Quickly turning and releasing the knob results in a jerky movement of the vehicle.*

**Note:** *You may have to use the knob to correct the trailer direction when attempting to move the trailer straight back under some conditions.*

### USING THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE VIEWS

Several camera views could be available when using trailer backup assistance. Use the view that helps you the most when reversing your vehicle and trailer.

**Note:** *The rear view camera view is available on all vehicles with trailer backup assistance. Additional views are available on vehicles with trailer reverse guidance.*



360° camera view. Shows a 360° view on the right-hand side of the touchscreen with a rear camera view on the left-hand side of the touchscreen.



Rear view camera view. Shows your trailer hitch or what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view camera view. Shows a 180° degree view of what is behind your vehicle.



Trailer reverse guidance view. Shows you a view of the sides of your truck and the trailer. In auto mode, this view moves as the trailer moves so that you do not have to adjust the camera as you turn. Left and right arrows let you see other camera views.



Auto. Press to return to auto view.

**Note:** *Auto is the default setting.*

# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

---

## Hitch Angle Graphic

The hitch angle graphic shows a small representation of your truck and trailer with visual feedback to help you monitor the trailer. The graphic shows two different colored lines for the trailer hitch angle. A black line shows you where your trailer is in relation to your vehicle. The white line represents the amount the trailer can turn based on knob input.

The graphic shows a yellow and red zone for the hitch angle to warn you of a high angle condition that could require you to pull forward to reduce the hitch angle. The angle limits for each zone vary based on the trailer length.

The yellow zone indicates you are approaching the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. When the trailer enters this zone, it is more difficult to reduce the trailer turn when backing up. It may be necessary to put your vehicle back into drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position.

The red zone indicates you have exceeded the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Immediately stop reversing. Put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward until the trailer is no longer in the red zone.

## Setting the Trailer Angle Limit

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Manage trailers**.
4. Press **Pro Trailer Backup Assist**.
5. Press **Trailer Angle Limit**.
6. Press a setting.

## Normal Control Angle

Default setting. This provides a balanced limit that returns from a turn to straight backing with minimal change to the trailer direction.

## Max Control Angle

Increases the trailer angle limit close to the maximum controllable angle to allow sharper turns but also causes more change in the trailer direction when straightening out from a turn.



## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

### TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Detecting Trailer Please Wait...	Displays when the system turns on and is initializing.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ System is Not Available	A condition exists that prevents the system from turning on. If the message continues to display, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Driving Required to Initialize Steering Press Knob to Exit	The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully enable the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 25 mph (40 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop now Maximum trailer angle Press Knob to Exit	Displays when you reach the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Stop now. Deactivated by trailer angle.	Displays when you exceed the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position, then activate the system by selecting the connected trailer and following the instructions on the touchscreen. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop Now Take Control of Steering Wheel	Displays when the system can no longer steer the vehicle and you must take over steering.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

Message	Description
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected. Shift to Park Press Knob to Exit	These messages display when the system does not detect the trailer.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected. Refer to Owner's Manual. Press Knob to Exit	Make sure the rear camera is clean, and the sticker is clearly visible in the camera image. You can also move the trailer forward or backward to change the trailer position and lighting conditions. If these messages continue to display, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected Pull Forward to Initialize Press Knob to Exit	This message displays when the camera system cannot detect the trailer and requires trailer movement to enable trailer detection. Drive forward above 2 mph (3 km/h) to initialize the system.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop Now System Not Active Press Knob to Exit	Displays when your vehicle is backing up but the system is not activated. Select the connected trailer on the touchscreen and follow the instructions to activate the system. This message also displays when you back up during the calibration process.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Backup Slowly Turn Knob to Steer Press Knob to Exit	Displays when the system turns on and is available to use.

# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

## TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does the trailer not reverse straight?

- Factors such as the hitch connection, road camber, road slope and trailer suspension could influence how straight the system can reverse the trailer when the control knob is not turned. You can compensate for the trailer drifting to the right or left by slowly turning the knob until the trailer is following your desired path and then holding the knob in that position.

### What does it mean if the system remains on one message for an extended time during calibration when setting up the system with the sticker?

- The camera could need to be cleaned, the sticker could be blocked, the drawbar could be outside the allowed range of 4–19 in (10–48 cm) or you could need to move to a different area to change the lighting and background. Verify the sticker is in the proper location. See **Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker** (page 293). You can move to a different area or change the direction you are driving or setup the system at a different time of day. Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

### What does it mean if the system pauses during calibration?

- There could be steering input or trailer movement during the straight drive portion of the calibration process.

### What does it mean if the system displays hold steering steady during turn?

- Part of the calibration process for the sticker setup requires a steady turn. If you are continually moving the steering wheel during the turn, this delays the calibration process. To enable the calibration process, hold the steering wheel at the same position when turning.

### What does it mean if the system displays that it is not available?

- There could be a subsystem that the system uses that is not correctly operating or there could be a battery voltage issue. If the system continues to display it is not available, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### What does it mean if the system displays that driving is required to initialize steering?

- The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully turn on the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 25 mph (40 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes. This could also occur when your vehicle is new, there is a battery voltage issue or if the steering system has been serviced.

### What does it mean if the system requires you to pull forward to initialize?

- This occurs when the vehicle has not moved during the current key cycle after you connect and select the trailer in the touchscreen or you operate the system at speeds below 1 mph (1 km/h) for an extended period of time. Drive forward above 2 mph (3 km/h) and the system indicates when it initializes.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

---

### What does it mean if the trailer is at its maximum angle or the system deactivated by trailer angle?

- You are at the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, this could indicate the sticker is incorrectly placed, the trailer needs to be recalibrated or the drawbar or the trailer dimensions are outside of the supported range. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate / tailgate surface to hitch ball center measurement of 10–17 in (26–43 cm) when installed. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to center of the axle or axles measurement of 6–20 ft (1.83–6.1 m). Do not use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function. Check that the correct trailer is selected in the touchscreen. Verify the sticker is placed according to the instructions. Then, delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup process to calibrate the trailer.

### What does it mean when the system tells you to take control of the steering wheel?

- The system is no longer steering the vehicle and you must take over steering. There are four reasons the system could display this message:
  - You have touched the steering wheel when the system is steering. Avoid touching the wheel during system operation.

- You have exceeded the maximum forward speed of 24.9 mph (40 km/h) for the feature to reactivate when you shift to reverse (R).
- The system no longer detects the trailer.
- An internal condition for system operation is not met that requires your vehicle to return to manual control of the steering.

### What does it mean if the system does not detect a trailer that is setup with a sticker?

- The system requires a clear view of the sticker placed on the trailer. You must keep the camera lens and sticker clean for the system to correctly operate. If the system cannot initially detect the trailer, it could be necessary for you to change the lighting conditions by moving your vehicle and trailer or waiting until the conditions change. See **Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker** (page 293). Some trailers and couplers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

**Note:** *The system is designed to be used with the same trailer connection every time you choose the trailer from the touchscreen. When using a different drawbar (tow ball mount) or a different pin hole on drawbars with more than one, connecting the drawbar to your vehicle affects the trailer position and you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration process.*

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE

Trailer reverse guidance provides views and graphics on the touchscreen to help you steer your vehicle when you backup a trailer.

## HOW DOES TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE WORK

Trailer reverse guidance uses a sticker attached to the trailer to detect the trailer angle relative to the towing vehicle and provides instructions, graphics and camera views on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Trailer reverse guidance only works with conventional trailers and couplers and on cars with a 360 degree camera system.

## TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. If you do not apply the brakes when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

**Note:** The system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always be aware of your vehicle and trailer combination, and the surrounding environment.

**Note:** The system does not detect or prevent your vehicle or trailer from making contact with obstacles in the surrounding environment.

**Note:** The front end of your vehicle swings out when changing the direction of the trailer.

**Note:** In certain conditions, the trailer could turn faster or the trailer angle could increase more than anticipated. Always monitor the clearance between the trailer and vehicle and the surroundings.

## SETTING UP TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE FOR A CONVENTIONAL TRAILER

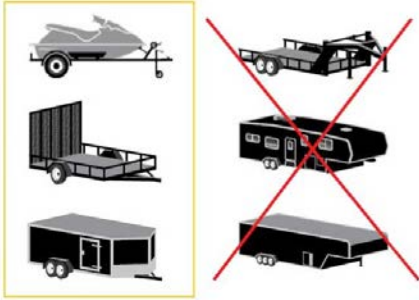
### CONFIGURING THE TRAILER

You must configure a trailer in the system to use trailer reverse guidance. This is a one-time setup process and the trailer information is saved in the system for the next time you use that trailer.

The system only works with conventional trailers. It does not work with other types including fifth-wheel and gooseneck. The following illustration shows examples of conventional trailers on the left-hand side.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

**Note:** Trailer reverse guidance camera views are available with no trailer setup. However, complete functionality including graphics and automatic view switching is enabled by setup. Setup is required to enable trailer backup assistance.



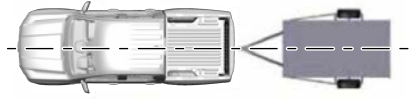
## Positioning the Trailer

Hitch the trailer to your vehicle and connect the electrical wiring harness. Check to make sure that the wiring is working. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 274).



Park your vehicle and hitched trailer on a level surface.

For best results, make sure that your trailer rides level with the ground when you hitch your vehicle. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 274).



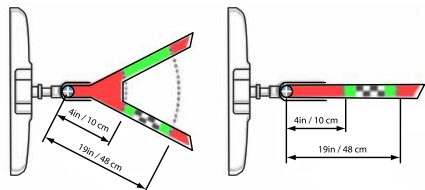
Make sure that the trailer and your vehicle are in line with each other. You can do this by putting the transmission in drive (D) and pulling straight forward.

## Configuring the Trailer in the Touchscreen

1. Shift to reverse (R).
2. Press the camera menu view button.
3. Press the trailer view icon.
4. Press **Add Trailer**.
5. Follow the directions on the touchscreen to enter the trailer name and trailer type, then proceed to the sticker setup.

## APPLYING THE TRAILER REVERSE AID STICKER

Place the sticker in an area visible by the rear view camera. The entire sticker must be within 4–19 in (10–48 cm) from the center of the hitch ball, as shown in the following illustration.



## Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

Use the supplied sticker placement card, a tape measure and pen to carefully mark the area to attach the sticker. Make sure the entire sticker is within the green zone between the two arcs or distance markers on the diagram, and is also visible in the rear view camera display.

Once you have found the correct location, place the sticker.

**Note:** Make sure nothing can obstruct the rear view camera's view of the sticker such as a jack handle or wiring.

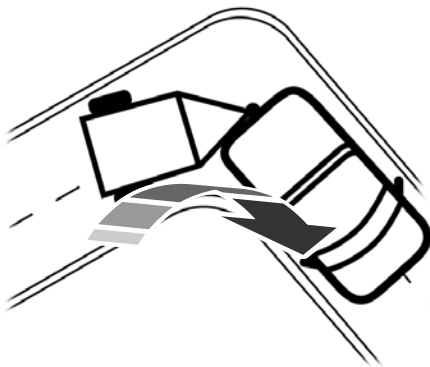
**Note:** Position the sticker on a flat, dry and clean horizontal surface. For best results, apply the sticker when temperatures are above 32°F (0°C).

**Note:** Do not move stickers after placing them. Do not re-use any stickers if removed.

**Note:** You can purchase additional stickers through your authorized dealer.

### CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

Calibrating the system requires driving forward and turning left or right. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to complete the calibration process.



**Note:** To calibrate the system, you need an area where you can safely drive forward and turn left or right. An open parking lot is an ideal place to perform the calibration.

**Note:** Keep the steering wheel straight when instructed to by the touchscreen. If the steering wheel is in a turned position during this instruction, the calibration pauses.

**Note:** During calibration, the system determines the trailer length. The system supports trailer lengths of 6–33 ft (1.85–10.05 m) distance from the hitch point to the center of the axle or axles. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate / tailgate surface to hitch ball center measurement of 9–18 in (23–46 cm) when installed. Do not attempt to use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.

**Note:** The touchscreen shows if you are going too slow or fast. Calibration pauses if the speed is outside the required range of 2–9 mph (4–15 km/h).

**Note:** You need to complete at least a 90° turn, longer trailers could require a 180° turn. Camera trailer tracking requires the system to locate the hitch ball as well as determine the trailer length. Some trailers could require you to drive straight then turn multiple times before calibration completes. The touchscreen provides instructions and notifies you when calibration completes.

**Note:** For best results, do not calibrate the system at night when calibrating the system with the sticker.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

## SWITCHING TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE ON AND OFF

Shift into reverse (R), press the rear camera button to expand the menu, press the trailer icon and use the touchscreen to select the connected trailer.

**Note:** *If the trailer was connected just prior to turning the system on, you may need to drive forward to initialize the system. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to activate the system.*

## USING TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE VIEWS

Up to seven camera views could be available when using trailer reverse guidance. Use the view that helps you the most when reversing your vehicle and trailer.



360° camera view. Shows a 360° view on the right-hand side of the touchscreen with a rear camera view on the left-hand side of the touchscreen.



Rear view camera view. Shows your trailer hitch or what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view camera view. Shows a 180° degree view of what is behind your vehicle.



Trailer reverse guidance view. Shows you a view of the sides of your truck and the trailer. In auto mode, this view moves as the trailer moves so that you do not have to adjust the camera as you turn. Left and right arrows let you see other camera views.



Straight backup mode. Shows which way to turn your steering wheel to keep the trailer straight.

Use this view when you want to keep your trailer completely in line with your truck.

**Note:** *It may be helpful to shift your vehicle into drive (D), pull forward and straighten out the vehicle and trailer before engaging straight backup mode.*



This takes you back to the 360° camera system and out of the trailer reverse guidance feature.



Auto. Press to return to auto view.

**Note:** *Auto mode is the default setting.*

## Hitch Angle Graphic

The hitch angle graphic shows a small representation of your truck and trailer with visual feedback to help you monitor the trailer. The graphic shows two different colored lines for the trailer hitch angle. A black line shows you where your trailer is in relation to your vehicle. The white line represents the amount the trailer can turn based on steering wheel position.

The graphic shows a yellow and red zone for the hitch angle to warn you of a high angle condition that could require you to pull forward to reduce the hitch angle. The angle limits for each zone vary based on the trailer length.

The yellow zone indicates you are approaching the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. When the trailer enters this zone, it is more difficult to reduce the trailer turn when backing up. It may be necessary to put your vehicle back into drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position.



## Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

---

The red zone indicates you have exceeded the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Immediately stop reversing.

Put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward until the trailer is no longer in the red zone.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

## TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Detecting Trailer Please Wait...	Displays when the system turns on and is initializing.
Trailer Reverse Guidance System is Not Available	A condition exists that prevents the system from turning on. If the message continues to display, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Driving Required to Initialize Steering Press OK to Exit	The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully enable the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 25 mph (40 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes.
Stop now. Deactivated by trailer angle.	Displays when you exceed the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position, then activate the system by selecting the connected trailer and following the instructions on the touchscreen. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Trailer Not Detected. Refer to Owner's Manual. Press OK to Exit	Displays when the system does not detect the trailer. Make sure the rear camera is clean, and the sticker is clearly visible in the camera image. You can also move the trailer forward or backward to change the trailer position and lighting conditions. If this message continues to display, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

---

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Trailer Reverse Guidance Trailer Not Detected Pull Forward to Initialize Press OK to Exit	This message displays when the camera system cannot detect the trailer and requires trailer movement to enable trailer detection. Drive forward above 2 mph (3 km/h) to initialize the system.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

## TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does the trailer not reverse straight?

Verify the sticker has been positioned correctly. Other factors such as the hitch connection, road camber, road slope and trailer suspension could influence how straight the system can reverse the trailer when the control knob is not turned. You can compensate for the trailer drifting to the right or left by slowly turning the knob until the trailer is following your desired path and then holding the knob in that position.

### What does it mean if the system remains on one message for an extended time during calibration when setting up the system with the sticker?

The camera could need to be cleaned, the sticker could be blocked, the drawbar could be outside the allowed range of 4–19 in (10–48 cm) or you could need to move to a different area to change the lighting and background. Verify the sticker is in the proper location. See **Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker** (page 302). You can move to a different area or change the direction you are driving or set up the system at a different time of day. Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

### What does it mean if the system pauses during calibration?

There could be steering input or trailer movement during the straight drive portion of the calibration process.

### What does it mean if the system displays hold steering steady during turn?

Part of the calibration process for the sticker setup requires a steady turn. If you are continually moving the steering wheel during the turn, this delays the calibration process. To enable the calibration process, hold the steering wheel at the same position when turning.

### What does it mean if the system displays that it is not available?

There could be a subsystem that the system uses that is not correctly operating or there could be a battery voltage issue. If the system continues to display it is not available, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### What does it mean if the system displays that driving is required to initialize steering?

The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully turn on the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 25 mph (40 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes. This could also occur when your vehicle is new, there is a battery voltage issue or if the steering system has been serviced.

### What does it mean if the system requires you to pull forward to initialize?

This occurs when the vehicle has not moved during the current key cycle after you connect and select the trailer in the touchscreen or you operate the system at speeds below 1 mph (1 km/h) for an extended period of time. Drive forward above 2 mph (3 km/h) and the system indicates when it initializes.

## Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

---

### What does it mean if the trailer is at its maximum angle or the system deactivated by trailer angle?

You are at the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, this could indicate the sticker is incorrectly placed, the trailer needs to be recalibrated or the drawbar or the trailer dimensions are outside of the supported range. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate / tailgate surface to hitch ball center measurement of 10–17 in (26–43 cm) when installed. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to center of the axle or axles measurement of 6–20 ft (1.83–6.1 m). Do not use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function. Check that the correct trailer is selected in the touchscreen. Verify the sticker is placed according to the instructions. Then, delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup process to calibrate the trailer.

### What does it mean if the system does not detect a trailer that is setup with a sticker?

The system requires a clear view of the sticker placed on the trailer. You must keep the camera lens and sticker clean for the system to correctly operate. If the system cannot initially detect the trailer, it could be necessary for you to change the lighting conditions by moving your vehicle and trailer or waiting until the conditions change. See **Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker** (page 302). Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

**Note:** *The system is designed to be used with the same trailer connection every time you choose the trailer from the touchscreen. When using a different drawbar (tow ball mount) or a different pin hole on drawbars with more than one, connecting the drawbar to your vehicle affects the trailer position and you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration process.*

# Driving Hints

## BREAKING-IN

Your vehicle requires a break-in period. For the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km), avoid driving at high speeds, heavy braking, aggressive shifting or using your vehicle to tow. During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.

- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

## DRIVING IN COLD WEATHER

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -13°F (-25°C).

### Driving on Snow and Ice



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 178).

In snow and ice, all-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles but can still skid. When driving on snowy or icy roads, should you start to slide, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

# Driving Hints

On snow and ice, avoid suddenly applying power and avoid quick change of direction. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a stop.

Avoid sudden braking. An all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice. However, an all-wheel drive vehicle will not stop any faster, as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident to road conditions.

## DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

### Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 312).

## DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN



**WARNING:** Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

**Note:** *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle rollover. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

**Note:** *Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brakes.*

## DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Steadily drive through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the instrument cluster display.

# Driving Hints

**Note:** If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator pedal in each gear.

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER

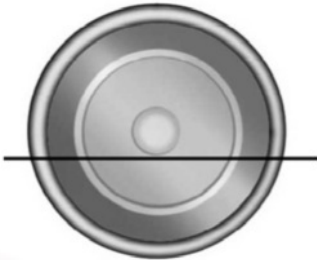


**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

**Note:** Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

## FLOOR MATS



**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



## Driving Hints

---



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

If you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period supplied with your vehicle.

Knowing your vehicle's VIN, mileage and your specific location allows help to get to you faster.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (8 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (20 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.

- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 50 mi (80 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 50 mi (80 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 50 mi (80 km). Warranty towing, non-warranty towing and collision towing are available.
- Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

United States vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance on your own, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 50 mi (80 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

### Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

If you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle. Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. For complete details, see your Warranty Guide at [www.ford.com/support/warranty/](http://www.ford.com/support/warranty/).

Download the Sykes4Ford Roadside Assistance App for access to your roadside assistance services. For more information, scan here:



If you require more information, please call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

Ford Motor Company reserves the right to modify or discontinue Roadside Assistance at any time. Certain restrictions apply to Roadside Assistance benefits.

For further details, call  
**1-800-665-2006** (Canada)  
**1-800-241-3673** (United States)

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.

- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

## Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 16 ft (5 m) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

## Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 49 ft (15 m) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

## SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

**Note:** *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



**WARNING:** Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.

# Crash and Breakdown Information



**WARNING:** All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery



**WARNING:** Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).



**WARNING:** The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.



**WARNING:** A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.



**WARNING:** Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.



**WARNING:** Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.



**WARNING:** Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.



**WARNING:** If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

## PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

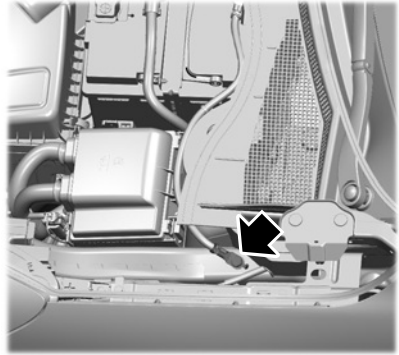
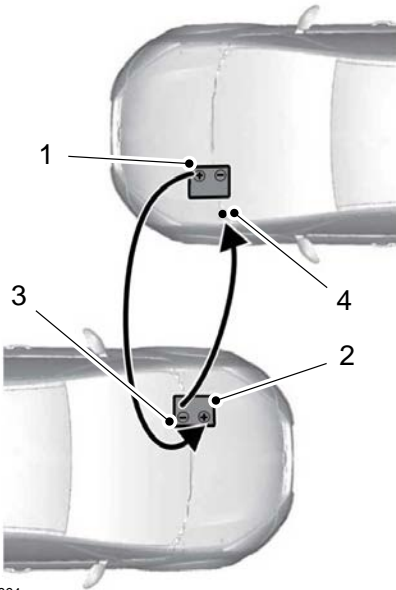
### Connecting the Jumper Cables



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

**Note:** *If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.*

# Crash and Breakdown Information



## Starting the Engine

- E142664
1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
  2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
  3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
  4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

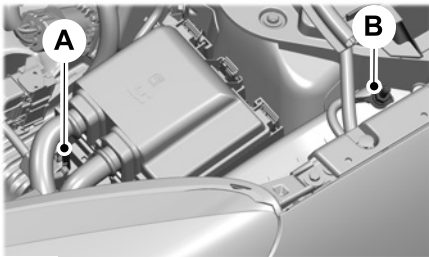
## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - HYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Connecting the Jumper Cables



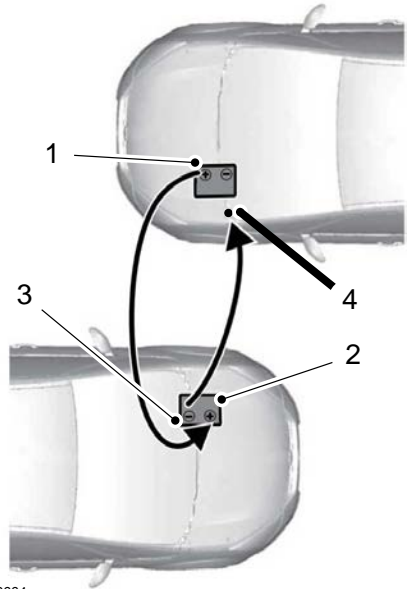
**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

**Note:** Your vehicle has a 12-volt battery that has two pins accessible from under the hood. Your vehicle can be jumped the same way conventional vehicles can by using these pins. The following illustration shows the two connector pins used for jump starting your vehicle.



- A Positive (+) pin.
- B Negative (-) pin.

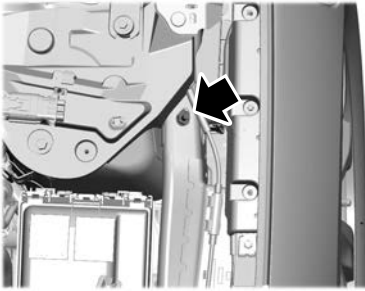
**Note:** If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



E142864

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

# Crash and Breakdown Information



## Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

### HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

### POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

### SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

**Note:** The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

## POST IMPACT BRAKING

### HOW DOES POST IMPACT BRAKING WORK

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

### POST IMPACT BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Post impact braking does not activate if any of the following occur:



# Crash and Breakdown Information

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

## OVERRIDING POST IMPACT BRAKING

You can override post impact braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

## POST IMPACT BRAKING INDICATORS



It flashes when a post impact braking event is occurring.

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

**Note:** *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

### AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

### RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## RECOVERY TOWING

### ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



**WARNING:** Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.

**Note:** *Do not apply a load to the winching holes or recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.*

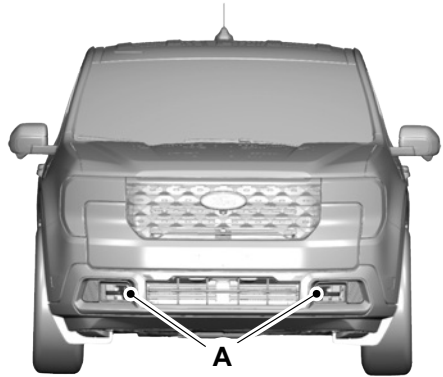
Before using winching holes or recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

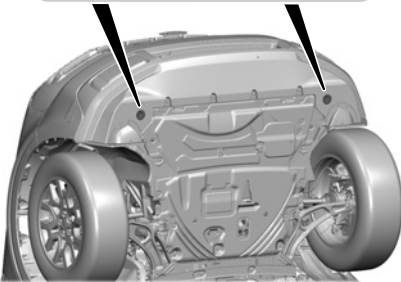
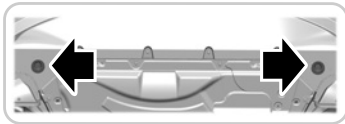
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.
- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

## Recovery Hooks (If Equipped)



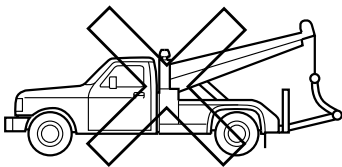
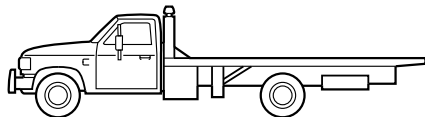
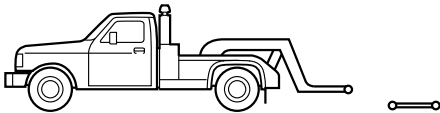
A Recovery hooks.

## Winching Holes (If Equipped)



# Crash and Breakdown Information

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Vehicle damage could occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Front-wheel and rear-wheel drive vehicles must have their designated drive wheels off the ground regardless of towing direction. Use tow dollies to prevent damage to the transmission.

All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.

**Note:** You need to switch on the ignition to unlock the steering.

**Note:** Make sure you check the steering column before towing. It could lock if the battery is dead.

## FAIL-SAFE COOLING

### WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

### HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

**Note:** Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

## FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Towing Your Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - FWD

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.

**Note:** If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - FWD

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational towing. An example of recreational towing is towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines make sure that you do not damage the transmission.

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Switching Recirculated Air On and Off** (page 110).

You can tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground under the following conditions:

- You switch **Neutral Tow** on.
- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You release the parking brake.
- You do not exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).

### Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Neutral Tow**.
5. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.
6. Fully press the brake pedal.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** Switching neutral tow on requires battery power.

**Note:** If the parking brake is applied, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** If your vehicle has an ignition key, you cannot remove the key from the ignition when the transmission is in neutral (N) and your vehicle is off.

**Note:** Start your vehicle at the beginning of each day, and every six hours or fewer. With the vehicle on and your foot on the brake, shift into drive (D) and then back into Neutral (N). Before continuing to tow, switch neutral tow on and keep the vehicle on for three minutes.

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - AWD

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. You must recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

# Towing Your Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

---

## EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch Neutral Tow on.
- You release the parking brake.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (55 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

## Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Neutral Tow.

5. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.
6. Fully press the brake pedal.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the transmission.*

**Note:** *Switching neutral tow on requires battery power.*

**Note:** *Switch your climate control system to recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page ?).*

**Note:** *For vehicles with electric brake booster, enabling neutral tow deactivates the brake booster. The red brake lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster indicating the brake booster is deactivated.*

## Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Shift into park (P).

# Towing Your Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

---

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES - FWD

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Neutral Tow Engaged Turn Ignition Off for Towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow engaged Depress Brake and Select Park to Exit Neutral Tow	Displays when neutral tow is active and you want to exit neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Remove Park Brake for Towing	Reminder to remove park brake when in neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

# Towing Your Vehicle - Gasoline

---

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - FWD

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. Place the front wheels on a two-wheel tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

**Note:** *Release the parking brake before towing your vehicle. See **Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 182).*

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - AWD

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. You must recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

## EMERGENCY TOWING

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.



# Fuses

## FUSE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



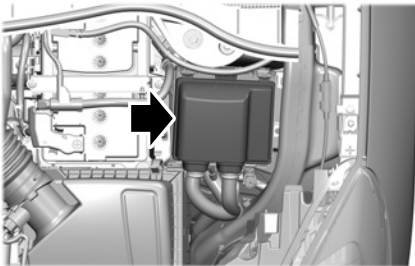
**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

## UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

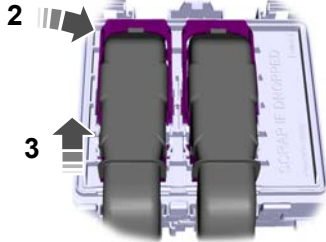
### LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



### ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

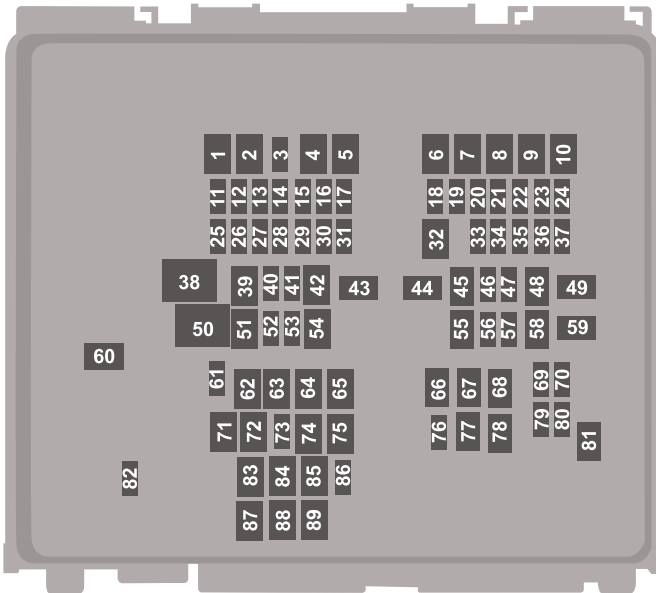
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

# Fuses



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



# Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	40 A	Driveline control module.
3	20 A	Horn.
4	40 A	Auxiliary heater (hybrid electric vehicle).
5	—	Not used.
6	—	Not used.
7	60 A	Auxiliary heater (hybrid electric vehicle).
8	—	Not used.
9	40 A	Auxiliary heater (hybrid electric vehicle).
10	30 A	Starter motor.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Powertrain control module.
13	15 A	Powertrain control module.
14	15 A	Powertrain control module.
15	—	Not used.
16	—	Not used.
17	10 A	Air conditioning compressor.
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
20	10 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid electric vehicle).
21	5 A	Adaptive cruise control.
22	5 A	Battery electronic control module (hybrid electric vehicle).

# Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
23	—	Not used.
24	20 A	Amplifier.
25	—	Not used.
26	10 A	Heated windshield camera.
27	—	Not used.
28	—	Not used.
29	—	Not used.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
34	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system module. Driveline control module.
35	—	Not used.
36	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
37	20 A	Trailer tow parking lamps.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	—	Not used.
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	50 A	Electric water pump (hybrid electric vehicle).
44	20 A	Trailer tow module.
45	—	Not used.
46	—	Not used.

# Fuses

<b>Item</b>	<b>Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
47	20 A	Heated seats.
48	30 A	Trailer tow lighting module battery charge.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake control pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	30 A	Moonroof.
52	5 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid electric vehicle).
53	—	Not used.
54	—	Not used.
55	—	Not used.
56	5 A	DC/DC converter (hybrid electric vehicle).
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	30 A	Climate controlled seat module.
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	25 A	Power sliding rear window.
61	—	Not used.
62	—	Not used.
63	—	Not used.
64	20 A	Left-hand side customer access load.
65	20 A	Right-hand side customer access load.
66	—	Not used.
67	—	Not used.
68	—	Not used.
69	10 A	Trailer tow backup lamps.

# Fuses

<b>Item</b>	<b>Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
70	15 A	Port fuel injectors.
71	20 A	Rear console power point.
72	20 A	Media bin power point.
73	5 A	Rear console.
74	—	Not used.
75	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
76	10 A	Heated exterior mirror.
77	40 A	Anti-lock brake valves.
78	—	Not used.
79	25 A	Left-hand side enhanced exterior lighting module.
80	25 A	Right-hand side enhanced exterior lighting module.
81	20 A	Fuel pump.
82	—	Not used.
83	40 A	Auxiliary power distribution box (hybrid electric vehicle).
84	20 A	USB additional.
85	60 A	Power inverter.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.
89	—	Not used.

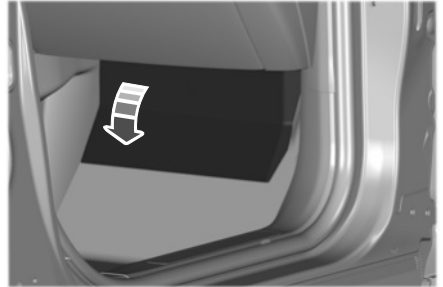
# Fuses

## BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

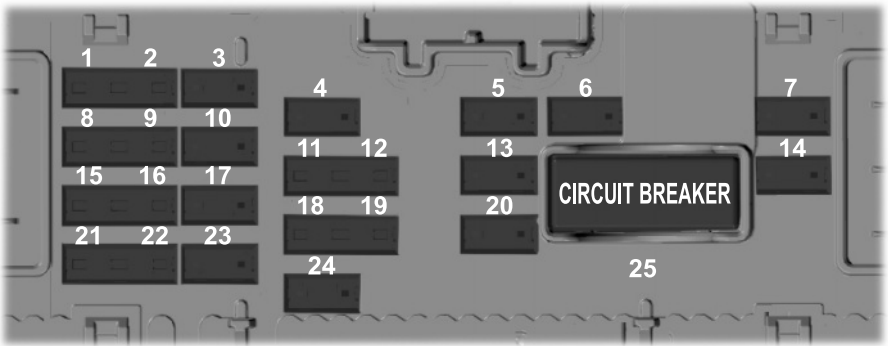
### LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



## ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



### IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Not used (spare).
2	5 A	Not used (spare).
3	10 A	Not used (spare).

# Fuses

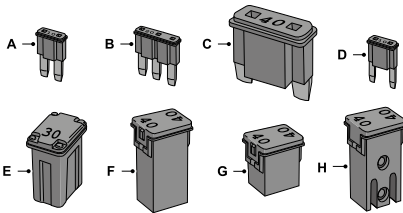
Item	Rating	Protected Component
4	10 A	Ignition switch. Push button start switch. Smart datalink connector. Key inhibit solenoid.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Moonroof. DC inverter. Power slide rear window switch.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Trailer brake switch.
9	5 A	Not used.
10	10 A	Extended power module.
11	5 A	Telematics control unit module.
12	5 A	Not used.
13	15 A	Driver door lock. Driver door unlock.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Extended power module.
16	15 A	Not used (spare).
17	15 A	Center display. Receiver transceiver module. Integrated control panel.
18	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging module.
19	7.5 A	Center display.
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster.



# Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
		Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Left-hand front power windows. Right-hand front power windows. Left-hand rear power windows. Right-hand rear power windows.

## IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

## FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

#### When do I need to replace a fuse?

- If a fuse has blown.

#### How do I identify a blown fuse?

- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

# Maintenance

## MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Service your vehicle regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

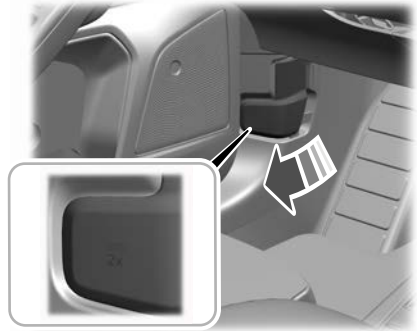
If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material, such as cigarettes, away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Set the parking brake, shift the transmission to park (P) and block the wheels.

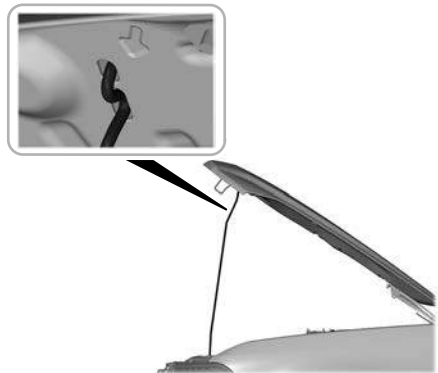
## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



1. Open the left-hand front door.
  2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.
- Note:** *This action releases the hood latch.*
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

**Note:** *This action fully releases the hood.*



# Maintenance

4. Open the hood and support it with the prop rod.

**Note:** *There is no secondary hood release under the hood.*

## Closing the Hood



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Fully stow the prop rod prior to closing the hood.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 10–14 in (25–35 cm).



Item	Measurement	Dimension
A	Height	10–14 in (25–35 cm)

## Warning Lamps and Indicators

### Hood Ajar



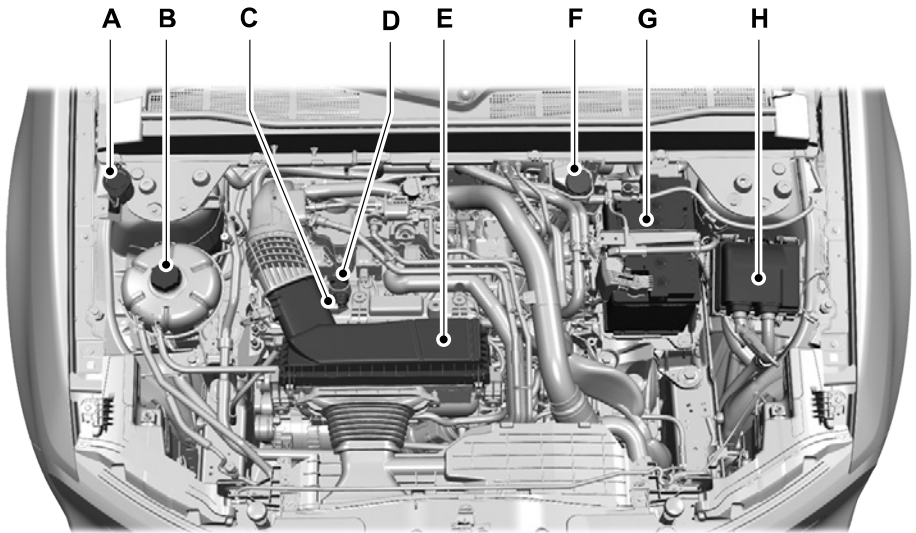
It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Information Messages

Message	Details
Hood Ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

# Maintenance

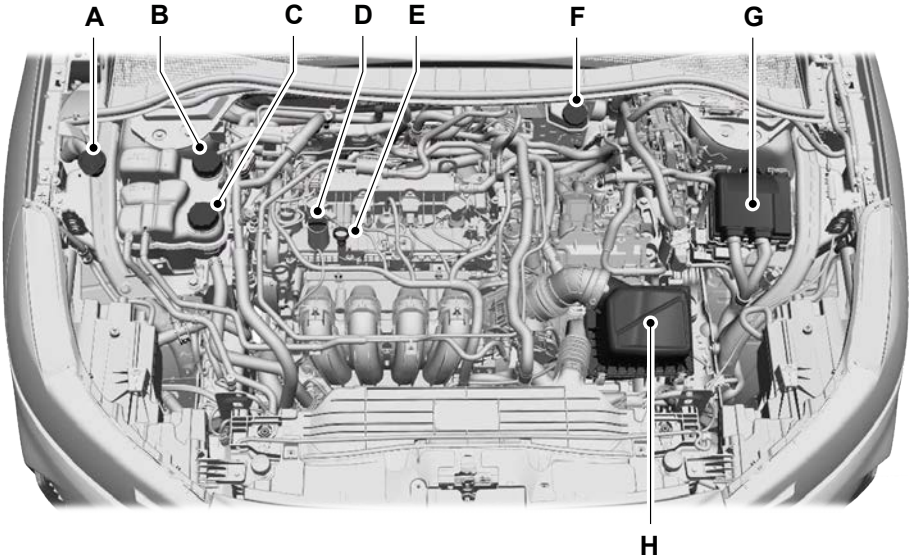
## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 83).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 349).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 342).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 342).
- E Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 346).
- F Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 178).
- G Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 356).
- H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 329).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

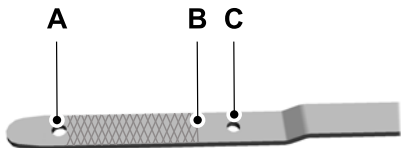


- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir: See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 83).
- B Low temp coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 349).
- C High temp coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 349).
- D Engine oil filler cap: See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 342).
- E Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 342).
- F Brake fluid reservoir: See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 178).
- G Power distribution box: See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 329).
- H Air filter assembly: See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 348).

# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL

### ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW



- A Minimum.
- B Nominal.
- C Maximum.

### CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

**Note:** *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

**Note:** *Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.*

**Note:** *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).*

**Note:** *Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.*

**Note:** *If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

### ADDING ENGINE OIL



**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Engine Oil** (page 343).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

# Maintenance

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

## INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Under certain conditions the vehicle's intelligent oil life monitor may determine your oil requires replacement prior to your general service. Should this occur it is recommended you replace your oil within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of being alerted.

Your authorized dealer will be able to advise you whether only an engine oil and filter change is recommended or whether you should complete your general service inclusive of oil and oil filter.

## RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Oil Life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

# Maintenance

---

## Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.1 qt (5.77 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Motor Oil (U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Motor Oil / Huile moteur SAE 5W-30 Motorcraft® (Canada) XO-5W30-Q1SP, XO-5W30-Q1FS (U.S.) CXO-5W30-LSP6, CXO-5W30-LFS6 (Canada)	WSS-M2C961-A1

## Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

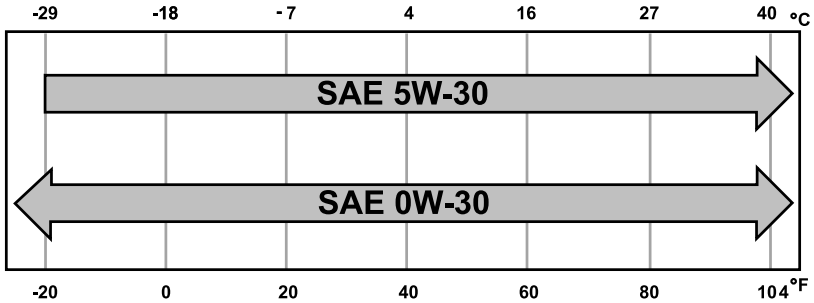
To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0°F (-30°C) or below.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C963-A1



# Maintenance



**Note:** If you use your vehicle regularly above the altitude of 5,000 ft (1,524 m) and under the temperature of  $-4.0^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), it is recommended to use the alternative engine oil.

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

# Maintenance

## Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.7 qt (5.4 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil (U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil / Huile moteur SAE 0W-20 Motorcraft® (Canada) XO-0W20-QFS (U.S.) CXO-0W20-LFS6 (Canada)	WSS-M2C962-A1

## ENGINE AIR FILTER

### CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

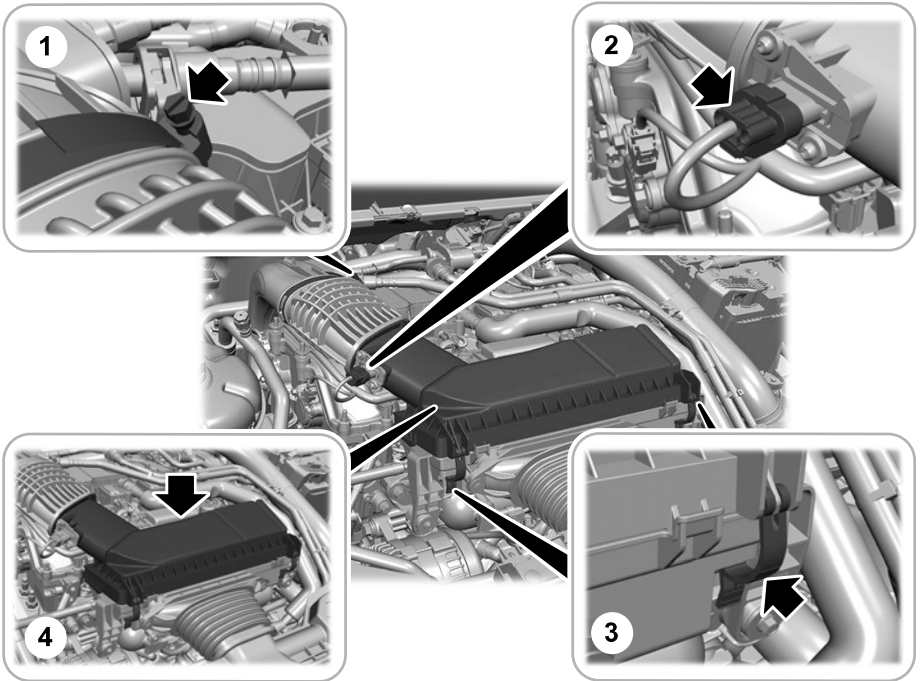
Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 366).

**Note:** *Failure to use the correct air filter element could result in severe engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.*

**Note:** *When servicing the air filter, do not allow foreign material to enter the air induction system. The engine is susceptible to damage from even small particles.*

# Maintenance



1. Loosen the clamp. See **Maintenance Videos** (page 363).
2. Disconnect the connector.
3. Release the two clips securing the airbox cover to the housing.
4. Lift up on the airbox cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the housing.
7. Install the new air filter element.

**Note:** *Be careful not to crimp the air filter element edges between the housing and cover. This can cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.*

8. Install the airbox cover back into the housing. Make sure that all four cover fingers are seated in their corresponding housing windows. Press down with your right hand on the flexible tube, while pulling back on the housing bracket with your left hand.
9. Reverse Steps 3, 2 and 1. Make sure the clamp joint is fully seated.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

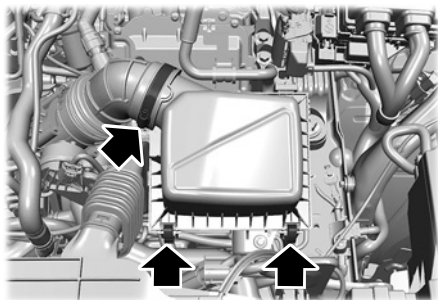


**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only parts that meet or exceed our specifications.

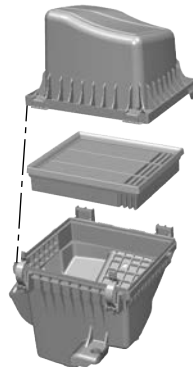
Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 447).

**Note:** If you do not use the correct air filter element, your vehicle warranty could be void.



1. Using a screwdriver, loosen the clamp on air filter housing cover.
2. Gently pull the boot back away from the air filter housing cover.
3. Release the two clips from the air filter housing cover.
4. Remove air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



7. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.
10. Reconnect the boot to the air filter housing cover and tighten securely.

# Maintenance

## COOLANT

### CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 447).

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29°F (-34°C) and -35°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## ADDING COOLANT



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

# Maintenance

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Vehicle Specifications** (page 364). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Vehicle Specifications** (page 364). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

**Note:** *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Vehicle Specifications** (page 364).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

# Maintenance

## MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



**WARNING:** If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 323).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

# Maintenance

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
With trailer tow package.	9.5 qt (9.02 L)
Without trailer tow package	9.0 qt (8.5 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/ Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	5.0 qt (4.7 L)
High temperature cooling circuit.	9.6 qt (9.1 L)



# Maintenance

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/ Coolant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft® (Canada) VC-13DL-G (U.S.) CVC-13DL-G (Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

## COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



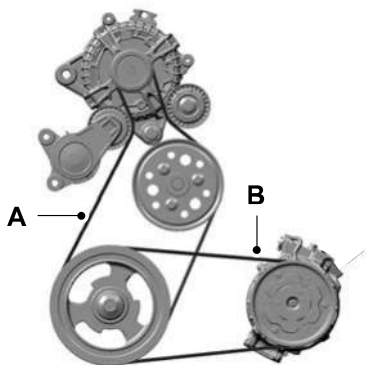
A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

## COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Checking the Coolant Level</b> (page 349).

# Maintenance

## DRIVE BELT ROUTING OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



- A. The long drive belt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.
- B. The short drive belt is on the second pulley groove farthest from engine.

## 12V BATTERY

### 12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**

**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

# Maintenance

## WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

## HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

## BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

**Note:** *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

## Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - HYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

The battery is in under the rear seat. See **Adjusting the Seat Cushion** (page 125).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

# Maintenance

---

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This allows the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

4. Detach the vent hose from the battery.
5. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
6. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
7. Remove the battery securing clamp.
8. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 94).
- Clock Settings.
- Preset radio stations.

## Replacing the Battery

**Note:** *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, vent hose, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 338).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

# Maintenance

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 94).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Replacing the Battery

**Note:** *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

## RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

**Note:** *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



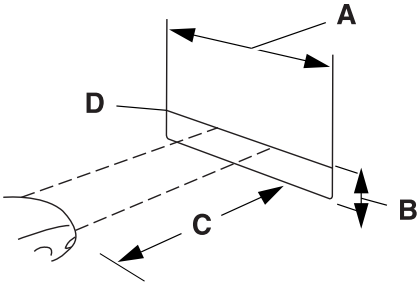
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, have the alignment of your headlamps checked as soon as possible.

# Maintenance

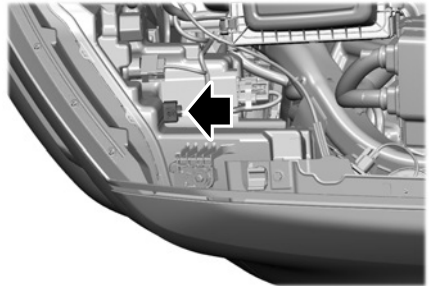


- A 8 ft (2.4 m).
  - B Center height of lamp to ground (measurement B is relative to vehicle height).
  - C 25 ft (7.6 m).
  - D Horizontal reference line.
1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away.
  2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark a 8 ft (2.4 m) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, block the light from one headlamp when adjusting the other.

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, adjust the headlamp.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

## Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

# Maintenance

## EXTERIOR BULBS

### EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be

marked with an authorized D.O.T. marking for North America to make sure they have the proper lamp performance, light brightness, light pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Headlamp low beam.	LED	LED
Headlamp high beam.	LED	LED
Front side marker lamp.	W5W	5
Front turn signal lamp.	4257NA Amber	26.5/8.5
Rear lamp, brake lamp, rear turn signal lamp and rear side marker lamp. Low series.	WT21-7W	26.5/8.5
Rear lamp, brake lamp, and turn signal lamp. High series.	WT21-7W	26.5/8.5
Rear side marker lamp. High series.	LED	LED
Reversing lamp.	WT21W	26.5
License plate lamp.	LED	LED
Rear cargo box lamp.	LED	LED
Central high mounted cargo lamp.	912	12.8
Underhood lamp.	LED	LED

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

### Warning Lamps and Indicators

#### Exterior Bulb Failure

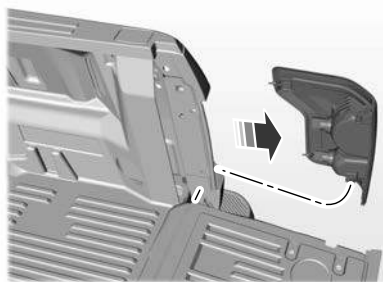


It illuminates when the ignition is on and there is an exterior bulb failure.

### REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Open the tailgate to access the rear lamp assemblies.

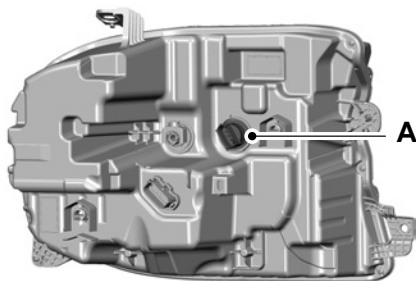
# Maintenance



3. Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly. Then, carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar by releasing the two retaining tabs.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

### Headlamp

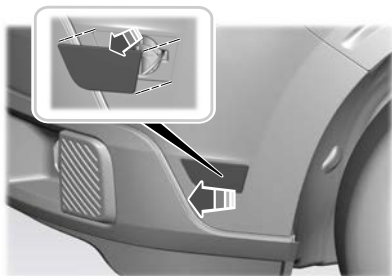


A Park/turn signal lamp.

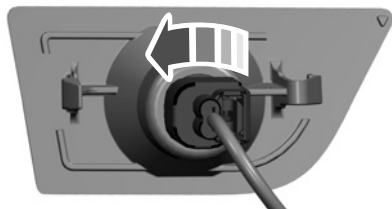
1. Disconnect the electrical connector.

2. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP BULB



1. Use a suitable tool, for example a trim tool, to push the lamp forward.
2. Pull the lamp out.



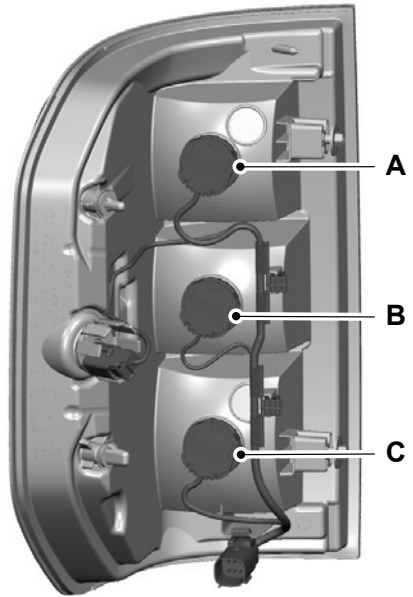
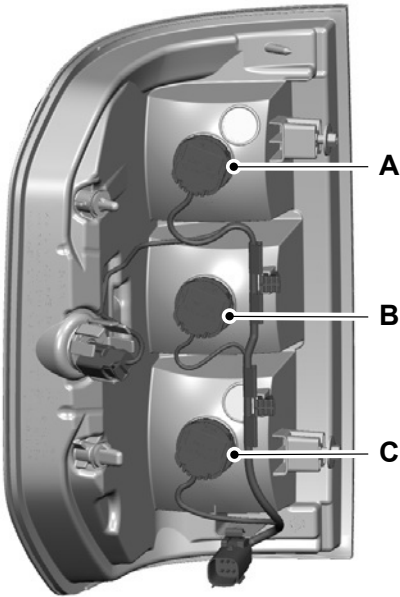
3. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the electrical connector.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.



# Maintenance

## CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB

## CHANGING A STOPLAMP BULB



- A. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.
- B. Reversing lamp bulb.
- C. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.

- A. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.
- B. Reversing lamp bulb.
- C. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.

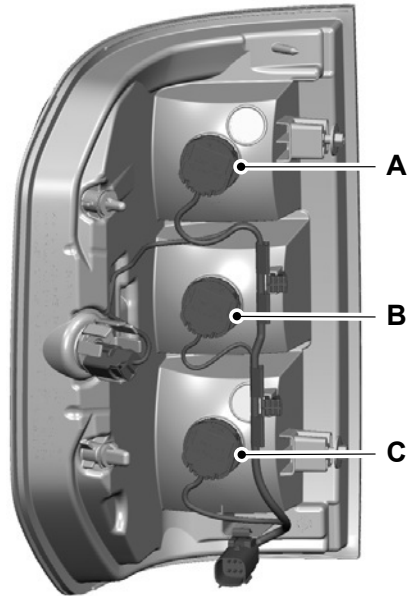
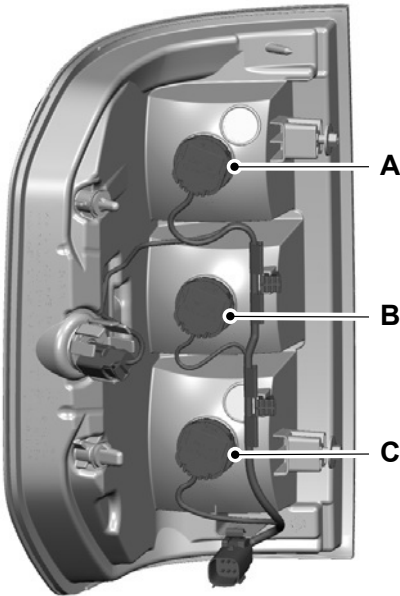
1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 359).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 359).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

## CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB



- A. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.
- B. Reversing lamp bulb.
- C. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.

- A. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.
- B. Reversing lamp bulb.
- C. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.

1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 359).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

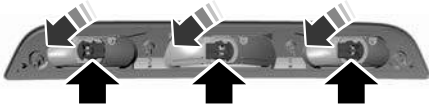
1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 359).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

# Maintenance

---

## CHANGING A HIGH MOUNTED STOPLAMP BULB

1. Make sure the lamps are off.
2. Remove the four screws and move the lamp assembly away from the vehicle to expose the bulb sockets.



3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise and pulling it out of the lamp assembly.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## INTERIOR BULBS

### INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## MAINTENANCE VIDEOS

[2.0L Engine Air Filter Replacement Video Link](#)

# Vehicle Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

<b>Engine</b>	<b>Specification</b>
Compression ratio.	10.8:1
Displacement.	121.7 in <sup>3</sup> (1,995 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.026–0.030 in (0.65–0.75 mm)

# Vehicle Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	13.0:1
Displacement.	152 in <sup>3</sup> (2,490 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.049–0.053 in (1.25–1.35 mm)

# Vehicle Specifications

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-2064
Battery. <sup>1</sup>	See note below. <sup>2</sup>
Cabin air filter.	FP-100-A
Engine oil filter. <sup>3</sup>	FL-2127
Spark plug.	SP-597-X
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2249 (driver side) WW-2054 (passenger side)

<sup>1</sup> Configure your vehicle's battery management system to match the replacement battery. Failure to use an appropriate configuration for your battery management system could result in shortened battery life, features not working correctly, or your vehicle not starting. Consult your local dealer or service provider for further details.

<sup>2</sup> See your dealer for the most current part number.

<sup>3</sup> If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that aligns to SAE/USCAR – 36 Performance Specifications. Filter Type B.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.fordparts.com](http://www.fordparts.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1948
Oil filter. <sup>3</sup>	FL-910-S
Battery. <sup>1</sup>	See note below. <sup>2</sup>
Spark plug.	SP-530-X

## Vehicle Specifications

---

<b>Component</b>	<b>Motorcraft Part Number</b>
Cabin air filter.	FP-100-A
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2249 (driver side) WW-2054 (passenger side)

<sup>1</sup> Configure your vehicle's battery management system to match the replacement battery. Failure to use an appropriate configuration for your battery management system could result in shortened battery life, features not working correctly, or your vehicle not starting. Consult your local dealer or service provider for further details.

<sup>2</sup> See your dealer for the most current part number.

<sup>3</sup> If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that aligns to SAE/USCAR – 36 Performance Specifications. Filter Type B.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.fordparts.com](http://www.fordparts.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover, ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner, ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash, ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser, ZC-20 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P3-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo, CXC-66-A (Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner, ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner, CXC-101 (Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant, ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid, CXC-37-F/M (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner, ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner, CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover, ZC-14 (U.S.)	-
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner, ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	-



# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

**Note:** *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

### CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

### CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

**Note:** *We recommend cleaning the power sliding rear window at regular intervals to avoid dust and debris accumulation to deliver appropriate function.*

### CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

**Note:** *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

### CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

# Vehicle Care

---

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

## CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.

**Note:** *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

**Note:** *Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.*

## CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 12 in (30 cm) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 1,000 psi (6,895 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 73°F (23°C).

**Note:** *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.*

## CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

## CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

### CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

### CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

**Note:** *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

**Note:** *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

## CLEANING FABRIC



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## CLEANING LEATHER



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

# Vehicle Care

3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
  4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
  5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
  3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## CLEANING VINYL



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

## CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING GLASS ROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

**Note:** *The glass roof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.*

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations makes sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

### General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

### Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

### Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Rewax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### 12 Volt Battery

- When storing your vehicle for longer than 30 days the battery state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend to disconnect the 12v battery to reduce system loads on the battery, or you can use a trickle charger for longer storage periods.
- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

**Note:** *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.
- To minimize flat spots on the tires, inflate all four tires to the recommended cold pressures listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle. When the vehicle is taken out of storage, reset the tire pressures as necessary to the recommended levels listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle.

**Note:** *If you store your vehicle in a location with low ambient temperatures, follow the instructions for care of summer tires.*

## Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake fully release.

**Note:** *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

## REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label or safety certification label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures. See **Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels** (page 267).

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES



Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires us to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.



# Wheel and Tire Information

## Traction AA A B C



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature A B C



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory

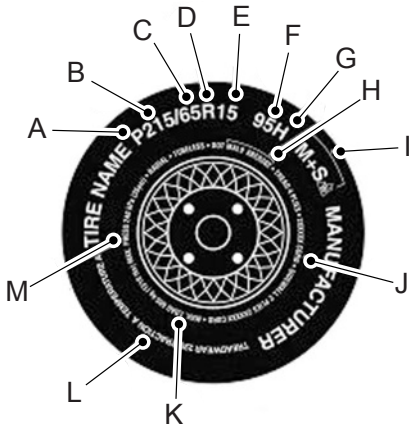
test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

**A. P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

**B. 215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**D. R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**F. 95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

**G. H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (300 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

## Wheel and Tire Information

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (160 km/h)
R	106 mph (170 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (300 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are

the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

**J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

# Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

## M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

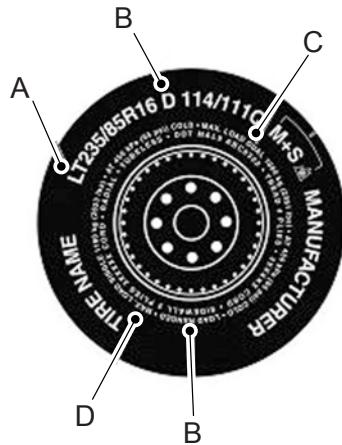
Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge

that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

## Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

## Wheel and Tire Information

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

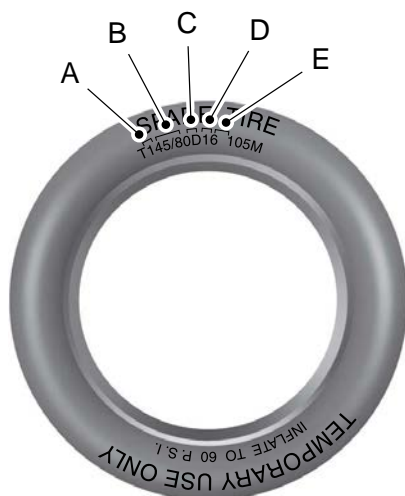
C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

### Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

# Wheel and Tire Information

---

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

## GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

\***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

\***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

\***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

\***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

\***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

\***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

\***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

\***B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

\***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

\***Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

# Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**\*Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

## TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



**WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



**WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.



**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

## Wheel and Tire Information



**WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

### Age



**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.




# Wheel and Tire Information


## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.


This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.


## USING SNOW CHAINS


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

 **WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

 **WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

 **WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The traction control activating is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, **slow down**.

 **WARNING:** Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety

# Wheel and Tire Information

---

Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

The tires on your vehicle could have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. In some climates you will need to use snow tires and chains on your vehicle in emergency situations or if required by law.

**Note:** *The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

**Note:** *Driving too fast for road conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.*

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Chains may damage aluminum wheels.
- Use ultra low profile cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/65R17 all season tires.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 235/65R17.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front tires only.
- When driving with snow chains do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.

- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring or brake lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

# Tire Care

## CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 387).

## INFLATING THE TIRES



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

# Tire Care

## Checking Pressure when tires are hot:

If pressures are checked after tires have been driven for more than three minutes or more than 1 mile, (2 km) the tires become hot and the pressures will increase by approximately 4 psi (27.6 kPa). Therefore when the tire pressure is adjusted under these conditions, it should be increased to a gauge reading of 4 psi (27.6 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure.

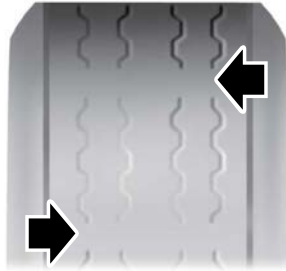
After inflating the tires while hot, make sure to recheck tire pressure later once the tires are cold.

## For Example Only

Gauge reading of hot tire	33 psi (230 kPa)
If recommended, cold inflation pressure is	32 psi (220 kPa)
The hot tire pressure is only 1 psi (10 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure. Therefore, add 3 psi (20 kPa) more to increase the hot pressure to 4 psi (30 kPa) over the recommended cold inflation pressure.	

New hot pressure	36 psi (250 kPa)
------------------	------------------

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR WEAR



When the tread is worn down to 2/32 inch (1.6 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 2/32 inch (1.6 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

# Tire Care

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves.

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismantled and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

## Safety Practices



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## HIGH SPEED DRIVING CAN BE DANGEROUS

Correct inflation pressure is especially important. However, at high speeds, even with the correct inflation pressure, a road hazard for example is more difficult to avoid and if contact is made, has a greater chance of causing tire damage than at a lower speed. Moreover, driving at high speed reduces the reaction time available to avoid accidents and bring your vehicle to a safe stop.

If you see any damage to a tire or wheel, replace it with the spare at once and visit a participating Tire Retailer.

Exceeding the maximum speeds shown on the following page for each type of tire will cause the tire to build up excessive heat which can cause tire damage that could result in sudden tire destruction and rapid air loss. Failure to control a vehicle when one or more tires experience a sudden air loss can lead to an accident.

**In any case, you should not exceed reasonable speeds as indicated by the legal limits and driving conditions.**

# Tire Care

---

## **DO NOT OVERLOAD: DRIVING ON ANY OVERLOADED TIRE IS DANGEROUS**

The maximum load rating of your tires is molded on the tire sidewall. Do not exceed this rating. Follow the loading instructions of the manufacturer of your vehicle and this will ensure that your tires are not overloaded. Tires which are loaded beyond their maximum allowable loads for the particular application will build up excessive heat that may result in sudden tire destruction. Do not exceed the gross axle weight rating for any axle on your vehicle.

## **TIRE ALTERATIONS**

Do not make or allow to be made any alterations on your tires. Alterations may prevent proper performance, leading to tire damage which can result in an accident. Tires which become unserviceable due to alterations such as truing, whitewall inlays, addition of balancing or sealant liquids, or the use of tire dressing containing petroleum distillates are excluded from warranty coverage.

## **REPAIRS - WHEREVER POSSIBLE, SEE YOUR TIRE RETAILER AT ONCE**

If any tire sustains a puncture, have the tire demounted and thoroughly inspected by a tire retailer for possible damage that may have occurred. A tread area puncture in any passenger or light truck tire can be repaired provided that the puncture hole is not more than 1/4" in diameter, not more than one radial cable per casing ply is damaged, and the tire has not been damaged further by the puncturing object or by running underinflated. Tire punctures consistent with these guidelines should only be repaired by following the US Tire Manufacturers Association (USTMA) recommended repair procedures. Plug-only repairs done on-the-wheel are considered improper and therefore, not recommended. Such repairs are not reliable and may cause further damage to the tire.

## **STORAGE**

Tires contain waxes and emollients to protect their outer surfaces from ozone and weather checking. As the tire rolls and flexes, the waxes and emollients continually migrate to the surface, replenishing this protection throughout the normal use of the tire. Consequently, when tires sit unused for long periods of time (a month or more) their surfaces

## Tire Care

---

become dry and more susceptible to ozone and weather checking and the casing becomes susceptible to flat spotting. **For this reason, tires should always be stored in a cool, dry, clean, indoor environment. If storage is for one month or more, eliminate the weight from the tires by raising the vehicle or by removing the tires from the vehicle. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in damage to your tires or premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.**

When tires are stored, be sure they are placed away from sources of heat and ozone such as direct sunlight, hot pipes and electric generators. Be sure that surfaces on which tires are stored are clean and free from grease, gasoline or other substances, which could deteriorate the rubber. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in damage to your tires or premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.

### **FOLLOW THESE MOUNTING RECOMMENDATIONS**

**Tire changing can be dangerous and must be done by professionally trained persons using proper tools and procedures as specified by the US Tire Manufacturers Association (USTMA). Single or dual assemblies must be completely deflated before demounting.**

Your tires should be mounted on wheels of correct size and type and which are in good, clean condition. Wheels that are bent, chipped, rusted (steel wheels) or corroded (alloy wheels) may cause tire damage. The inside of the tire must be free from foreign material. Have your retailer check the wheels before mounting new tires. Mismatched tires and rims can explode during mounting. Also, mismatched tires and rims can result in dangerous tire failure on the road. If a tire is mounted by error on the wrong-sized rim, do not remount it on the proper rim - scrap it. It may have been damaged internally (which is not externally visible) by having been dangerously stretched and could fail on the highway.

# Tire Care

---

**Old valves may leak. When new tubeless tires are mounted, have new valves of the correct type installed. Tubeless tires must only be mounted on wheels designed for tubeless tires i.e., wheels which have safety humps or ledges.**

It is recommended that you have your tires and wheels balanced. Tires and wheels, which are not balanced, may cause steering difficulties, a bumpy ride, and irregular tire wear.

**Be sure that all your valves have suitable valve caps. The valve cap is the primary seal against air loss.**

## TEMPORARY SPARE TIRES

When using any temporary spare tire, be sure to follow the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

**REMEMBER... TO AVOID DAMAGE TO YOUR TIRES AND POSSIBLE ACCIDENT:**

- CHECK TIRE PRESSURE AT LEAST ONCE EACH MONTH WHEN TIRES ARE COLD AND BEFORE LONG TRIPS.
- DO NOT UNDERINFLATE/OVERINFLATE.
- DO NOT OVERLOAD.
- DRIVE AT MODERATE SPEEDS, OBSERVE LEGAL LIMITS.

- AVOID DRIVING OVER POTHOLES, OBSTACLES, CURBS OR EDGES OF PAVEMENT.
- AVOID EXCESSIVE WHEEL SPINNING.
- IF YOU SEE ANY DAMAGE TO A TIRE, REPLACE WITH THE SPARE AND VISIT ANY AUTHORIZED RETAILER AT ONCE.
- IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS, CONTACT YOUR AUTHORIZED RETAILER.

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.



# Tire Care

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

## INSPECTING THE WHEEL VALVE STEMS

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

## TIRE ROTATION



**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always

perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

**Note:** *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

**Note:** *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

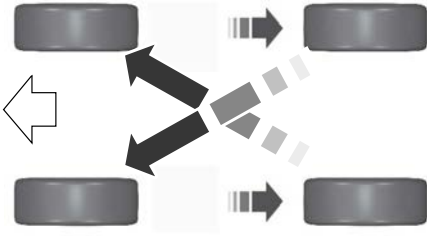
**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

## Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.

# Tire Care

---



# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seat) or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

**Note:** *If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.*

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

**Note:** *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

**Note:** *After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the warning indicator to turn off.*

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Tire Pressure Low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Changing a Road Wheel

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer to prevent damage to the system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions** (page 396). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.


If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.


**Note:** *The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies.*


**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*


 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.


 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.


 **WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.


 **WARNING:** It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.


 **WARNING:** Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.


 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.

 **WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.


 **WARNING:** If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.


 **WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

 **WARNING:** Make sure that the wheels are pointing straight ahead.


# Changing a Road Wheel

 **WARNING:** Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.

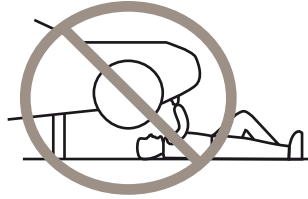
 **WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

 **WARNING:** Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.


 **WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

 **WARNING:** Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.



## Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

 **WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that we provided with the vehicle. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, replace it instead of repairing it.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

- 1. T-type mini-spares:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.
- 2. Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:



# Changing a Road Wheel

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.

- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability

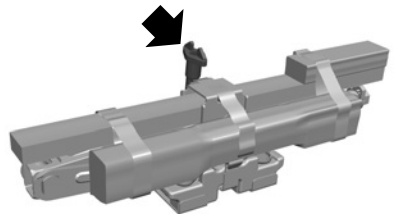
When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

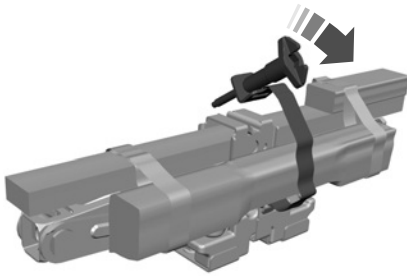
### Removing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag

The vehicle jack and tool bag are on the rear passenger side of your vehicle, behind the passenger seat.

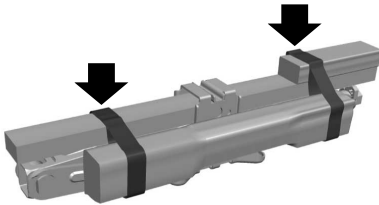


1. Turn the wing bolt on the jack bracket counterclockwise to release the jack and tool bag from the jack bracket.

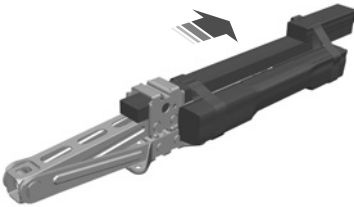
# Changing a Road Wheel



2. Remove the jack and tool bag from the jack bracket.



3. Release the jack tool bag straps.

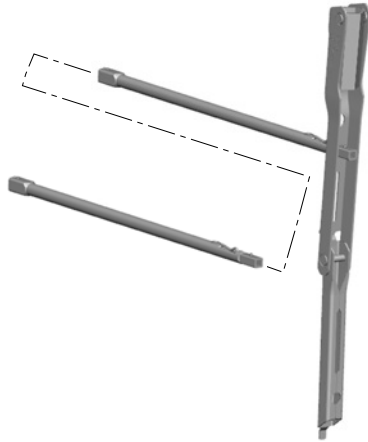


4. Slide the jack tool bag through the jack load rest to remove for access to the jack tools.
5. Remove the tools from the tool bag.

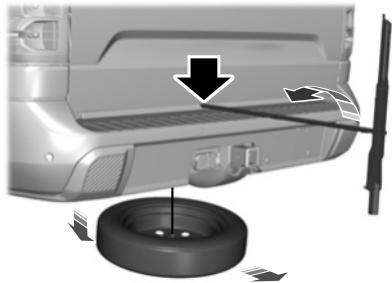
**Note:** Your jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle.

## Removing the Spare Tire

The spare tire is located under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper.



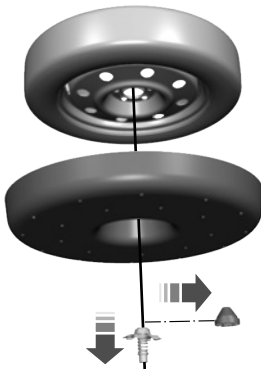
1. Assemble the jack handle as shown in the illustration.



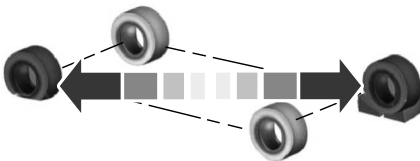
# Changing a Road Wheel

2. Fully insert the jack handle through the bumper hole and into the guide tube through the access hole in the rear bumper. Turn the handle counterclockwise until the tire and aero shield are lowered to the ground and the cable is slightly slack so you can slide the tire rearward from under the vehicle.

**Note:** Vehicles with a full size spare wheel and tire do not include the aero shield as shown.



3. Remove the retainer from the center of the wheel and lower the aero shield cover to expose the spare wheel and tire.



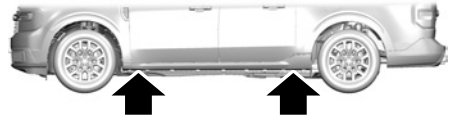
4. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

## Jacking the Vehicle

1. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

**Note:** Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

2. The vehicle jacking points shown here are also depicted on the warning label on the jack. Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.



3. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is completely off the ground.

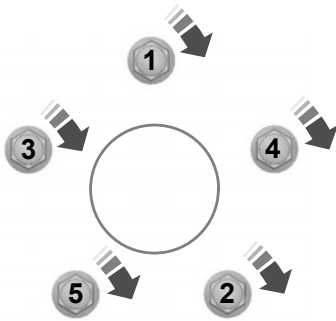


4. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

# Changing a Road Wheel

**Note:** For vehicles with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.

5. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
6. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
7. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown.

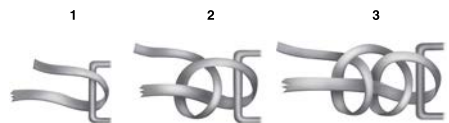
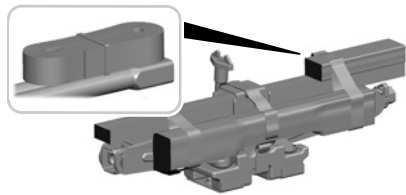


8. Stow the flat tire. See the Stowing the Flat or Spare Tire.
9. Stow the vehicle jack and lug wrench. Make sure the jack is securely fastened before you drive. See Stowing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag.
10. Unblock the wheels.

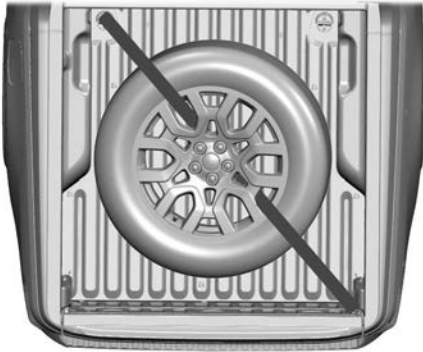
## Stowing the Road Wheel

1. Place the flat tire in the center of the vehicle bed with the wheel facing up.
2. Locate the retainer strap mounted on the jack.

3. Locate the cargo tie-down hooks in the corner of the bed.
4. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.
5. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
6. Locate the tie-down at the opposite corner of the bed. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
7. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.



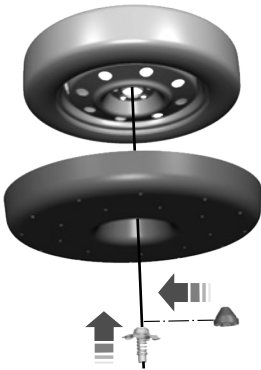
# Changing a Road Wheel



## Stowing the Spare Tire

1. Lay the tire on the ground inside the aero shield with the valve stem facing down.

**Note:** Vehicles with a full size spare wheel and tire do not include the aero shield as shown.

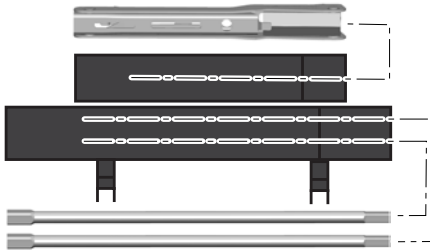


2. Slide the wheel and aero shield partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center including the aero shield. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
3. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the point where the ratchet or slip occurs, a minimum of three times as indicated by an audible click each time. The spare tire carrier does not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, contact your authorized dealer.
4. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it does not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire could result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.
5. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure, every six months, as per your scheduled maintenance information, or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.

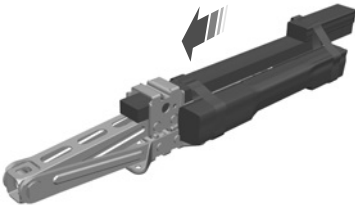
**Note:** Failure to follow the spare tire stowage instructions could result in failure of the cable or loss of the spare tire.

# Changing a Road Wheel

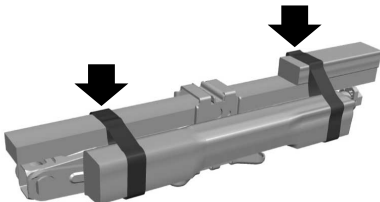
## Stowing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag



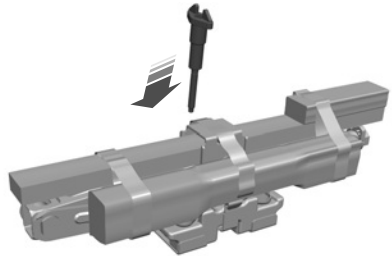
1. Place the tools inside of the tool bag.



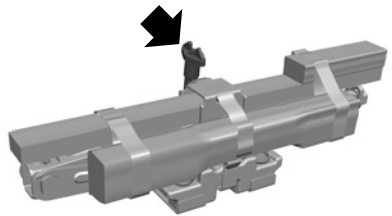
2. Install the tool bag through the vehicle jack load rest.



3. Secure the jack tool bag straps around the vehicle jack.



4. Place the jack and tool bag back onto the jack bracket.



5. Turn the wing bolt on the jack bracket clockwise until the jack and tools are secured to the jack bracket.

# Changing a Road Wheel

## WHEEL NUTS



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt size	lb.ft (Nm)
M14 x 1.5	148 lb.ft (200 Nm)

\*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 mi (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).



A Wheel pilot bore.

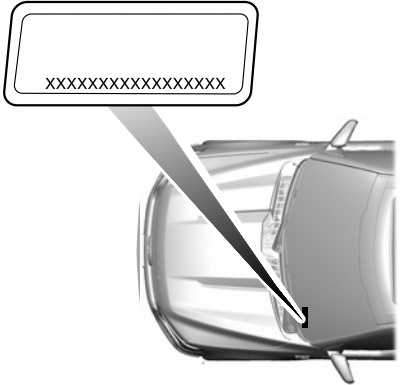
Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

# Vehicle Identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

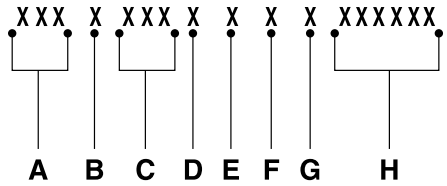
The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



**Note:** In the illustration, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER OVERVIEW

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:



- A World manufacturer identifier.
- B Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
- D Engine or motor type.
- E Check digit.
- F Model year.
- G Assembly plant.
- H Production sequence number.



# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Ford mobile app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

## ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity.
2. Press Connected Vehicle Features.
3. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

## CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 424).
2. Press Wi-Fi.
3. Switch Wi-Fi on.
4. Press View Available Networks.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

# Connected Vehicle

## CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

**Note:** Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is my Ford mobile app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

#### Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

#### Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

#### What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

# Connected Vehicle

---

## **Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?**

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

## **Why do software downloads take too long?**

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

## **Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?**

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

# Vehicle Hotspot

---

## SETTING UP A VEHICLE HOTSPOT

With a data plan, your hotspot can provide devices in and around your vehicle with Wi-Fi data.

**Note:** *A mobile device is required to complete hotspot setup.*

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle Hotspot. See **Center Display** (page 424).
2. Press Settings.
3. Press Show Password.
4. Connect your device to the vehicle hotspot by selecting the hotspot from the list of Wi-Fi Networks.
5. When prompted, enter the password.

## Activating a Trial or Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to your vehicle hotspot. The vehicle network carrier's service activation website opens on your device.

**Note:** *If the website does not open, open a new website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's website.*

2. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan or start a trial.

**Note:** *Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.*

**Note:** *Hotspot services are subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

## VEHICLE HOTSPOT SETTINGS

You can change the following in the vehicle hotspot settings menu:

- Vehicle hotspot name or password.
- Vehicle hotspot frequency.

## Changing the Vehicle Hotspot Name or Password

The hotspot information can only be updated once you activate the hotspot.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle Hotspot. See **Center Display** (page 424).
2. Press Settings.
3. Press Edit.
4. Press Change Network Name.
5. Enter your required network name.
6. Press enter to save the network name.
7. Press Change Password.
8. Enter your required password.
9. Press enter to save the password.

## Changing the Vehicle Hotspot Frequency

The vehicle hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You cannot connect your device to the vehicle hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle Hotspot. See **Center Display** (page 424).
2. Press Settings.
3. Press Edit.
4. Press Change Frequency Band.
5. Select a frequency.

# Vehicle Hotspot

---

## VEHICLE HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### VEHICLE HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### **Why can I not see the vehicle hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?**

- Make sure the vehicle hotspot visibility is on.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.
- The system does not provide a vehicle hotspot at this time.

#### **How do I remove the vehicle from the vehicle network carrier's account?**

- Contact your vehicle network carrier.

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

## SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

Press **Sources** on the touchscreen to open the media source menu.

## MEDIA CONTROL BUTTONS



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

**Note:** *Not all sources can be paused.*



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

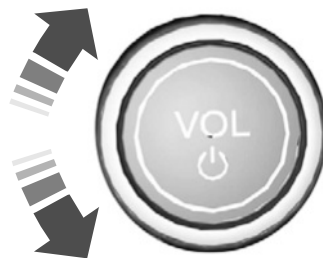
**Note:** *Not all sources have shuffle mode.*



Press the button on the touchscreen to change repeat mode.

**Note:** *Not all sources have repeat mode.*

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

# Audio System

## SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station or channel.
2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once it is stored.*

**Note:** *You can save presets from multiple sources to the memory preset bar.*

## MUTING THE AUDIO



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the audio.



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

## ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

To access the sound settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Sound.

From the menu, you can adjust the following:

- Tone settings.
- Balance and fade.
- Speed compensated volume.
- Volume settings.
- Sound mode/Occupancy mode

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options, not all settings are available.*

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. From the settings menu, press Clock. See **Center Display** (page 424).
2. Set the time.

**Note:** *The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.*

## Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Clock. See **Center Display** (page 424).
2. Switch Auto Time Update on or off

## AM/FM RADIO

### AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

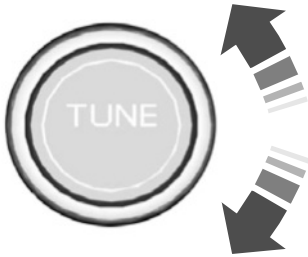
Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

# Audio System

## SELECTING A RADIO STATION

### Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Turn to search through the radio frequency band.

### Using Direct Tune

1. Press **Direct Tune** to open the number pad.
2. Enter the station you prefer.

**Note:** You can only enter a valid station for the audio source you are currently listening to.

### Using Seek



Press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.



### Using the Station List

1. Press **Browse**.

**Note:** Available on FM radio only.

2. Press a station.

## SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF

### Audio Unit



Press the button.

### Touchscreen

To switch the display off:

1. From the settings menu, press Display.
2. Press Display Off.

**Note:** The display defaults to on each time you switch your vehicle on.

To switch the display on, press anywhere on the touchscreen.

## DIGITAL RADIO

### WHAT IS DIGITAL RADIO

HD Radio™ technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio.

For additional information, visit [www.HDRadio.com](http://www.HDRadio.com).

HD Radio Technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of XPERI. The vehicle manufacturer and XPERI are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

### HOW DOES DIGITAL RADIO WORK

Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts in addition to analog broadcasts.



# Audio System

HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in both analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations are only available digitally and could contain new or different content.

**Note:** *When the system first receives an HD1 station, it plays the station in the analog version until it verifies the station is an HD Radio station. Then it shifts to the digital version.*

**Note:** *There is an audio mute delay when switching to an HD2 or HD3 station because the system has to reacquire and decode the digital signal.*

## DIGITAL RADIO LIMITATIONS

If you are outside the reception area, the system could not work.

If you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station could mute due to weak signal strength.

**Note:** *If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. If you are listening to any other multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.*

Depending on the station quality, you could hear a slight sound change when the station changes between analog and digital audio.

You cannot access a saved HD station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.

## SWITCHING DIGITAL RADIO RECEPTION ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Radio.
2. Switch HD Radio on or off.

## DIGITAL RADIO INDICATORS

### HD Radio Indicator

The indicator appears when HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology.



The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is acquiring a digital station.

Orange indicates digital audio is playing.

### Multicast Indicator

The multicast indicator appears if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers indicate additional digital channels available.

**Note:** *For stations that have more than one HD multicast, the HD indicator and radio text appears as a button. Press the button to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency.*

## SATELLITE RADIO

### WHAT IS SATELLITE RADIO

Your factory-installed SiriusXM radio system includes a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

# Audio System

For additional information about extended subscription terms, visit [www.SiriusXM.com](http://www.SiriusXM.com) in the United States, [www.SiriusXM.ca](http://www.SiriusXM.ca) in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** *SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Neither SiriusXM and its affiliates nor Ford Motor Company and its affiliates will be liable to you or any third party for any such modification, suspension or termination.*

## SATELLITE RADIO LIMITATIONS

For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. Placing luggage over the antenna may reduce performance. Factory-installed and aftermarket vehicle structures including, but not limited to, roof racks and soft top roofs in a partially open position could reduce reception performance.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and could result in the audio system muting. Your display could show an error message to indicate the interference.

## LOCATING THE SATELLITE RADIO IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

1. Select SiriusXM as the audio source.
2. Tune to channel 0.

## SELECTING A CHANNEL

### Manually Selecting a Channel



Press the button to find the previous or next available radio channel.



### Linear Tuner

The linear tuner is displayed when manually selecting a channel. You can swipe left or right on the linear tuner carousel to navigate through the channel list. Tap on a channel title to listen to it.

### Using Direct Tune

1. Press the channel up or down button to open the linear tuner screen.
2. Press **Direct Tune** to open the number pad.
3. Enter the channel you prefer.

### Using Seek



Press either button.



### Using the Channel List

1. Press **Browse**.
2. Select a channel.

## SATELLITE RADIO SETTINGS

### Subscription

Your subscription status is displayed. You can subscribe or manage your subscription directly from the touchscreen.

# Audio System

---

## SiriusXM Favorites

While you are listening to SiriusXM, you can save favorites by:

- Tapping the currently tuned channel or show logo on the SiriusXM audio screen.
- Tuning to a channel or show you want to save as a favorite. Navigate to the SiriusXM Favorites screen and press the Add Current button. The currently tuned channel or show is saved as a favorite.
- Saving a radio preset. This saves the currently tuned SiriusXM channel or show as a favorite

**Note:** *Requires a trial or active subscription to use.*

## Listening History

Listening history is a list of recently listened to SiriusXM content. You can view, manage and reset the listening history using the controls on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Requires a trial or active subscription to use.*

## Help and Support

You can contact SiriusXM Customer Care directly from the operating system and view information required to manage your SiriusXM account.

## SETTING AN ALERT



Set a notification for the current song, artist, or sports team by pressing the icon. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts.

**Note:** *Notifications can be switched on or off and edited in the satellite radio settings.*

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING (IF EQUIPPED)

### AUDIO SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

#### Satellite Radio Troubleshooting

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Connectivity Disabled	Internet streaming and On Demand shows are unavailable and some SiriusXM features are disabled.	Internet connectivity is turned off. See <b>Connected Vehicle</b> (page 409).
No Internet	Audio system may mute. Switch to Satellite button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via satellite.	SYNC attempts to connect. See <b>Satellite Radio Limitations</b> (page 418). Switch to a satellite connection for the current channel if the option is available.
No Satellite Signal	Audio system may mute. Switch to Internet button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via streaming.	Antenna may be obstructed or satellite reception is weak in your location. See <b>Satellite Radio Limitations</b> (page 418). Switch to an internet connection for the current channel if the option is available.
Slow Network Connection	Audio system may mute while the audio attempts to load.	Allow some time for the audio to load or tune to a different channel.
Channel Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to tune to the channel. If the issue continues, the channel may no longer be available.
Episode Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to play the episode. If the issue continues, the episode may no longer be available.

# Audio System

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Something went wrong	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	Allow some time and retry the action.
Subscribe to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	<p>Your subscription has expired or you have not yet subscribed for access to the listed content. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit <a href="http://www.siriusxm.com/refresh">www.siriusxm.com/refresh</a> in the US, or <a href="http://www.siriusxm.ca/refresh">www.siriusxm.ca/refresh</a> in Canada.</p> <p>You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See <b>Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number</b> (page 418).</p>

# Audio System

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Upgrade to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	Your subscription does not include access to the listed content. You may need to upgrade your subscription. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit <a href="http://www.siriusxm.com/refresh">www.siriusxm.com/refresh</a> in the US, or <a href="http://www.siri-usxm.ca/refresh">www.siri-usxm.ca/refresh</a> in Canada. You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See <b>Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number</b> (page 418).
Location Restricted Content	Audio may mute. Not available in your location or Unable to determine your location may be displayed.	Content is not available in your location or SiriusXM is unable to determine your location. Tuning to a different channel may resolve the issue.
Channel Blocked	Audio may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	The Block Explicit Content filter is turned on. Navigate to Listener Settings under the Satellite Radio Settings menu to access the Block Explicit Content filter. Navigate to Listener Settings.
Antenna Problem or Hardware Problem	Audio may mute. Access to SiriusXM features may be unavailable.	If issue persists, you may need to visit an authorized dealer for service.

# Audio System

---

<b>Error Message</b>	<b>Potential Effects</b>	<b>Recommended Action</b>
SiriusXM Updating...	Audio may mute.	Allow SiriusXM some time to complete updating.
Loading...	Audio may mute. Content may be temporarily unavailable while loading.	No action necessary. If loading time is longer than usual,
SiriusXM Loading...	Audio may mute. Content and controls may be temporarily unavailable.	No action necessary. Allow SiriusXM some time to finish loading.

# Center Display

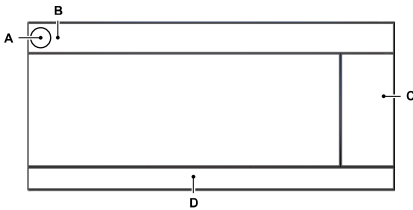
## CENTER DISPLAY OVERVIEW



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 5 mph (8 km/h).

**Note:** Illustrations are provided for conceptual understanding only and may appear differently on your vehicle.



- A Home screen button. See **Home Screen** (page 424).
- B Status bar. See **Status Bar** (page 424).
- C Information on demand screen. See **Information On Demand Screen** (page 426).
- D Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 110).

## HOME SCREEN



Press to open the home screen.

Features, such as navigation, audio and phone, are located in the main portion of the display. The icons located on the side of the display allow you to access other vehicle features and settings.



Press to access the settings menu.

You can change the display language and other measurement units under the General menu.



Press to view features.

**Note:** The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.



Press to see a list of apps. To open an app, select the app.



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

## STATUS BAR

The status bar appears at the top of the display. The following buttons and icons can appear in the status bar.

**Note:** Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.

## Alexa Built-In



Press to set up Alexa. See **Alexa Built-In** (page 429).



# Center Display

## Wireless Charging



Wireless charging active.



Device connected and not charging.

## Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not active.



Traffic announcements are active.

**Note:** If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

## Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

## Outside Air Temperature



Outside air temperature is active.

## Audio System



Audio system muted.

## Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

## Software Updates



Press to see details about software updates. See **Vehicle Software Updates** (page 441).

# Center Display

---

## Back Button



Some screens have a back button in the top corner. Press the button to return to the previous screen.

## INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

You can swipe up or down to view a different card.

**Note:** *On some screens, you can swipe a card toward the center of the screen to move the content into the main screen.*

## SETTINGS

### Display Settings

From the display menu you can do the following:

- Switch the calm screen on.
- Manually adjust the screen brightness.
- Set the display mode.



### Touchscreen Brightness

To manually adjust the screen brightness, use the plus or minus buttons.

**Note:** *The display brightness is limited if the settings of the instrument panel lighting brightness are set to the highest or lowest setting.*

## DRIVER ASSISTANCE MENU

To access the driver assistance menu:

1.  Press to open the home screen.
  2.  Press to view features.
- Note:** *The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.*
3. Press Driver Assistance.

## REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and audio system power button for 10 seconds.

# Voice Interaction

## FORD ASSISTANT

### USING FORD ASSISTANT

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

**Note:** You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 409).

### Voice Command Examples

To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant.
2. Press Voice Command Help.
3. Select a feature.

### FORD ASSISTANT SETTINGS

To access the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant.

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advanced mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.
- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

### FORD ASSISTANT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

#### Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example \*, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

# Voice Interaction

---

## **Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?**

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example \*, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

## **Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?**

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

## **Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?**

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

## Alexa Built-In (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

### ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

**Note:** *Support and functionality may vary based on the country in which your FordPass account is registered.*

### SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.

6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

### Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

### USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

**Note:** *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

### ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

#### Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

**Note:** *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

#### Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:

## Alexa Built-In (If Equipped)

---

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.
4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

**Note:** *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

### Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.

# Phone

## PHONE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch **Bluetooth®** on.



Press the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Add Phone**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

### Recent Call List

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

### Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

### Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

**Note:** Up to 12 devices can be stored.

### Do Not Disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

### Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

# Phone

---

## Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

**Note:** *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*



# Phone

## MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

### Making Calls

**To call a number in your contacts, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your recent calls, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your favorites, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favorites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

### Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

**To accept the call, select:**

Menu Item
Accept

**Note:** You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

**To reject the call, select:**

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

### During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

# Phone

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

## SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

# Phone

## SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

The settings on your device must be enabled to receive text message notifications on the center display. Check your device settings to enable these features.

## ENABLING APPS ON A MOBILE DEVICE

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

### Enabling Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Select Mobile Apps Help.
2. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.
4. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Some apps may run through Apple CarPlay if it is enabled.

**Note:** Closing an app on your device closes it on the touchscreen.

**Note:** For troubleshooting assistance select Mobile Apps List under Mobile Apps Help.

### Enabling Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Select Mobile Apps Help.
2. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.
4. Select **Find Mobile Apps**.
5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

**Note:** Some apps may run through Android Auto if it is enabled.

**Note:** Closing an app on your device closes it on the touchscreen.

**Note:** For troubleshooting assistance select Mobile Apps List under Mobile Apps Help.

## SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

### Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** Selecting Enable Wireless CarPlay on your device prepares the device for wireless CarPlay when you reenter the vehicle.

# Phone

---

## Enabling Apple CarPlay with Wireless

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

## Disabling Apple CarPlay



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Disable.

## Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Connect to Apple CarPlay.

## SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF

### Enabling Android Auto with USB

(If Equipped)

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.*

### Enabling Android Auto with Wireless

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Certain Android™ devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Check your Android OS version for compatibility.*

## Disabling Android Auto



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Disable.

## Re-Enabling Android Auto



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Connect to Android Auto.

# Bluetooth®

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch Bluetooth® on.

Select the settings options on the feature bar.

1. Select Bluetooth®.
2. Switch Bluetooth® on.
3. Select Add a Bluetooth® Device.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

4. Select your vehicle on your device.

**Note:** A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

5. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.



Press the audio button on the feature bar.



Press **Sources**.



Press the **Bluetooth®** option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

# Navigation (If Equipped)

## CONNECTED NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may have connected navigation as a free trial after purchase. You require a subscription after the trial expires. For additional information, visit [ford.com/connectedservices](http://ford.com/connectedservices).

**Note:** *If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.*

## ACCESSING NAVIGATION



Press the button to access Navigation.

**Note:** *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

## NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact dealers at 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada, or 800-557-5539 in Mexico.

**Note:** *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to [www.here.com/mapcreator](http://www.here.com/mapcreator).*

## ADJUSTING THE MAP

### ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

## CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP



Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Map Orientation tile.
2. Select a map orientation.

## LIVE TRAFFIC

### WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

### SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF



Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Traffic on Map tile.
2. Press Traffic on or Traffic Off.

## SETTING A DESTINATION

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
3. Press Search.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Press Start to begin navigation.

# Navigation (If Equipped)

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

Press and hold on the map to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.



Press the button to begin navigation to the pin.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION



Press the button.

Press a destination from the list.

**Note:** You can also use the search button to view recent destinations.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.



Press the button.

Press a destination from the list.

**Note:** You can also use the search button to view saved destinations.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

Press a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.



Press the button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

**Note:** You can also use the search button to view points of interest.

## WAYPOINTS

### ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Press the search button during an active navigation session.
2. Enter your destination.
3. Select your destination from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to add a waypoint.

### EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

## ROUTE GUIDANCE

### ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

### REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

## Navigation (If Equipped)

---

### CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.



# Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 409).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 442).

## Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

## Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
  - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
  - Charging resumes once the update completes.

## SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Settings.
2. Press Software Updates.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on or off.

# Vehicle Software Updates

Switch Automatic Updates on. When Automatic Updates is set to on, you agree that software updates may be automatically delivered without any further notice or additional consent from you.

To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we recommend switching Automatic Updates On.

**Note:** *Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.*

## Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

### Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Schedule Updates.
2. Selecting from a list of available timings or customizing gets auto saved.

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options some vehicles have the save option.*

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle.

**Note:** *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

### Installing Software Updates

#### Using the Status Bar

1. Press the Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

#### Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Updates Details.
2. Press Update Now.

#### Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu, press Update Details.

## SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

# Vehicle System Reset

---

## PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.

You can perform multiple resets from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

# Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

<b>Web Address (United States)</b>
------------------------------------

<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.com">www.Accessories.Ford.com</a>
--

<b>Web Address (Canada)</b>
-----------------------------

<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.ca">www.Accessories.Ford.ca</a>
--

We will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

We will warrant your Ford Original Accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Ford Licensed Accessories are the accessory manufacturer's designs. The manufacturer develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

# Ford Protect

---

## WHAT IS FORD PROTECT

Ford Protect vehicle service contracts are the only service contracts 100% backed by Ford Motor Company. Protect yourself from unforeseen covered repairs with a Ford Protect extended service plan.

### Ford Protect Extended Service Plans - United States Only

You can drive on with confidence as Ford Protect extended service plans provide more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. When you visit your Ford Dealer, insist on a Ford Protect extended service plan.

### Ford Protect Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One repair bill can easily exceed the price of your Ford Protect extended service plan. With the Ford Protect extended service plan, you have peace of mind from unforeseen covered repairs.

### Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four mechanical Ford Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage to fit your individual needs. Ask your Ford dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it is probably easier to list what is not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Ford-authorized parts used for covered repairs.
- Factory-trained and certified technicians.
- Rental vehicle benefits for up to 10 days for covered repairs.

### 24-Hour Roadside Assistance

Roadside assistance includes:

- Tire change, lockout, out-of-fuel and battery jump-start assistance.
- Towing Assistance.
- Emergency Travel Expense.
- Destination Assistance.

### Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner.

### Premium Maintenance Plan

It is more than just a routine oil change. Keep your vehicle running at its optimum performance with a Ford Protect Premium Maintenance extended service plan. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the future cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Premium Maintenance covers these important maintenance items:

- Engine oil and filter changes.
- Multi-point inspections.
- Tire rotations.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers and struts.
- Spark plugs.
- Clutch discs-if equipped.

# Ford Protect

---

- Engine belts, coolant hoses and clamps.
- Wiper blades.

This information is subject to change. Visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Protect extended service plan that is right for you.

## More Information

To learn more about Ford Protect plans and financing options, please contact your selling Ford Dealer.

## Ford Protect Extended Service Plan - Canada Only

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Protect extended service plan. Ford Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase a Ford Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

**Note:** *Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford Protect extended service plan coverage.*

# Scheduled Maintenance

## Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™

Your vehicle has an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how you use your vehicle. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the instrument cluster display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

## Maintenance Intervals

<b>At Every Oil Change Interval as Indicated by the Information Display<sup>1</sup></b>
Change the engine oil and filter. <sup>2</sup>
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection, recommended.
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, hoses and the parking brake.
Inspect the engine coolant level/strength and the hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and the heat shields.
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints - all wheel drive only.
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints.
Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
Inspect cabin air filter if equipped, service as required.
Inspect engine air filter, service as required.

<sup>1</sup> Do not exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between service intervals. Hybrid vehicles may achieve longer distances between oil changes, but do not exceed the one-year max oil change interval.

<sup>2</sup> Reset the oil change reminder after engine oil and filter changes. See **Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor** (page 343).

# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Brake Fluid Maintenance<sup>1</sup></b>	
Every three years.	Change the brake fluid. <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perform this maintenance item every 3 years. Do not exceed the designated time for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Brake fluid servicing requires special equipment available at your authorized dealer.

<b>Other Maintenance Items<sup>1</sup></b>	
Every 20,000 mi (32,000 km)	Replace the cabin air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Replace the engine air filter. For severe service, Change the automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	For severe service, Replace the spark plugs.
Every 100,000 mi (160,000 km)	Replace the spark plugs.
	Inspect the accessory drive belt or belts. <sup>2</sup>
Every 150,000 mi (240,000 km)	Change the automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace the accessory drive belt or belts. <sup>3</sup>
At 200,000 mi (320,000 km)	Change the engine coolant. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perform these maintenance items within 3,000 mi (4,800 km) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

<sup>3</sup> If not replaced within the last 100,000 mi (160,000 km).

<sup>4</sup> Initial replacement at 10 years or 200,000 mi (320,000 km), then every five years or 100,000 mi (160,000 km).

## Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the schedule:



# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## Axle and PTU Maintenance

The Power Transfer Unit (PTU) and rear axle (AWD only) in your vehicle does not require any scheduled maintenance. The PTU lubricant may be more likely to require a fluid change if the vehicle has extended periods of extreme or severe duty cycle driving. Changing or checking the PTU lubricant is not necessary unless the unit has been submerged in water, shows sign of leakage. Contact your authorized dealer for service.

## California Fuel Filter Replacement

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

## Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the oil change interval is 5,000 mi (8,000 km).

## Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

## What Are Considered Severe Driving Conditions

A vehicle that is driven for short trips of less than 5–10 mi (8–16 km), driving in temperatures well below or above average, driving in any dusty conditions, idling more than recommended such as in traffic, and driving with a heavy load or while towing a load are considered severe driving conditions. If the vehicle is driven in any of these conditions, follow the severe service maintenance items listed in the scheduled maintenance chart.

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual.

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

### Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

### Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use our authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

### Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

**Note:** *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

## Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle comes with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, a message appears in the instrument cluster display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km), hybrid vehicles could exceed 10,000 mi (16,000 km).

When the oil change message appears in the instrument cluster display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of the message appearing. Make sure to reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor** (page 343).

If your instrument cluster display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5,000 mi (8,000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between oil change intervals.

You can drive your vehicle in such a way that may lead to higher oil consumption including extended time at high engine speeds, high loads, engine braking, hard cornering maneuvers, track and off-road usage. Under these conditions, oil consumption of approximately 1 quart per 500 miles (1 liter per 800 km) is possible. Check the engine oil level at every refueling and adjust to maintain proper levels to avoid engine damage.

# Scheduled Maintenance

You can also drive your vehicle in such a way that dilutes and increases the level of oil by frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, extended idling and low speed driving for long periods of time.

It is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

We strongly recommend only using our genuine or our authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

## Additives and Chemicals

We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

## Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. Have discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately checked.

Make sure to change the vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using our approved flushing chemical.

## Scheduled Maintenance Service Intervals

For your scheduled maintenance service intervals, visit <https://www.ford.com/support/maintenance-schedule>.

## Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Check Every Month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires, including spare, for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Check Every Six Months</b>
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Seatbelts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and seatbelt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

## Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

<b>Multi-Point Inspection</b>	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels <sup>1</sup> ; fill if necessary	Tires, including spare, for wear and proper pressure <sup>2</sup>

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

<b>Multi-Point Inspection</b>	
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

<sup>1</sup> Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer.

<sup>2</sup> If your vehicle has a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

## Severe Driving Conditions

A vehicle that is driven for short trips of less than 5–10 mi (8–16 km) miles, driving in temperatures greatly below or above average, driving in any dusty conditions, idling more than recommended such as in traffic, and driving with a heavy load or while towing a load are considered severe driving conditions. If you drive your vehicle in any of these conditions, follow the severe service maintenance items listed in the scheduled maintenance chart.

# Customer Information

## ROLLOVER WARNING



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

## THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU AUTO LINE PROGRAM

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator considers the testimony provided and makes a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information that follows, call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to

## Customer Information

---

try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that needs to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB reviews the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE a Division of BBB National Programs, Inc.  
1676 International Drive, Suite 550  
McLean, VA 22102**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information, refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

### **THE MEDIATION AND ARBITRATION PROGRAM**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straightforward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN THE UNITED STATES**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

## Customer Information

---

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN CANADA

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website (English)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/recalls">http://tc.canada.ca/recalls</a>
Website (French)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/rappels">http://tc.canada.ca/rappels</a>
Phone	1-800-333-0510

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>
Phone	1-800-565-3673



# Customer Information

## THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

## RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar (RRU2)	Aptiv	2F5TR

### Argentina

15375-23-12270



### China

CMIIT ID: 2023LJ10407

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément:

040/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément:

16/04/2024

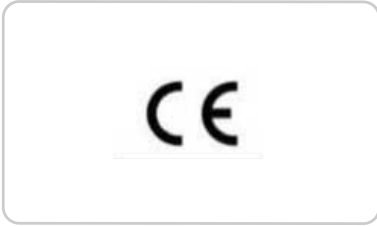
H-28070

### Brazil



# Customer Information

## Europe Union EU



## Mexico

IFT: ROAP2F23-27117

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:

MR00036523ANRT2023

Date d'agrément:

30/01/23

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7E6-M0-XDF-TME

## Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 98785/SDPPI/2024  
PLG ID: 13493



## Paraguay



NR: 2022-04-I-0255

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA - 2F5TR.

## South Africa

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément:

1222/ARE/2023

Date d'agrément:

06/02/2023



# Customer Information

---

## South Korea



R-C-1Ap-2F5TR

## Taiwan



CCA123LP0640T2

## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

The logo for TDR (Telecommunications Regulatory Authority) is the text 'TDR' in blue with a gold triangle above the 'A', underlined.

**TDR**

ER10085/22  
United Arab Emirates



## United Kingdom



## United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2C2F5TR

IC: 3432A-2F5TR

# Customer Information

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

*Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:*

- 1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
- 2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar	Aptiv	F5TR

### Argentina



### Brazil



# Customer Information

---

## China

CMIIT ID: 2022LP14250

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 195/MCPT/DDTIC  
Date d'agrément : 06/09/2021

## Europe Union EU

CE

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X0E

## Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 90715/SDPPI/2023  
PLG ID: 13493



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – F5TR.

# Customer Information

---

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0985/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 24/08/2021

## Paraguay



## Mexico

IFETEL: RCPAPF520-0480

NR: 2020-10-I-0753

## Singapore

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Nu méro d'agrément : MR00030033ANRT2021  
Date d'agrément : 16/09/2021

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## South Africa



# Customer Information

## South Korea



## Thailand

- (1) ชื่อบริษัทและรูปแบบอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องพจนานุกรมของ กทข.
- (2) ชื่อวีดิทัศน์และวีดิทัศน์การเคลื่อนย้ายสินค้าเพื่อใช้ในการขนส่งทางอากาศตามนี้คือชื่อของอากาศยานของบริษัท

## Taiwan



## Ukraine



## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



# Customer Information

---

## United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

## Vietnam





# Customer Information

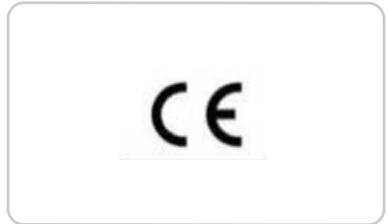
## BODY CONTROL MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
D2 Bosch BCM	Bosch	P004 P005 P006

### Argentina



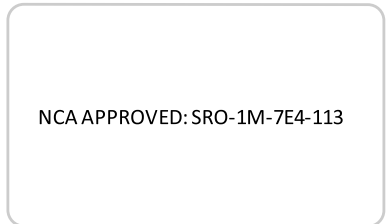
### European Union EU



### Brazil



### Ghana



# Customer Information

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X4D

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – P004.

## Israel

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - P005

## Mauritania

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוג משרד התקשורת: 51-72602
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במסגרת שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או חוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרצות אלחוטיות.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0801/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – P004R.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0768/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 11/03/2020

# Customer Information

## Moldova



## Paraguay



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24200 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 27/05/2020

2020-07-1-0405

2021-01-0037

## Serbia



I011 20

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 23513 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 24/03/2020

## Singapore

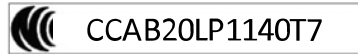
Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

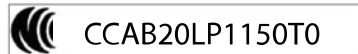
# Customer Information

---

## South Africa



## South Korea



R-R-175-P005

## Taiwan



## Ukraine



## Customer Information

---

### United Kingdom



TRA  
REGISTERED NO: ER80748/20  
DEALER NO: DA83047/19

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
REGISTERED NO: ER81344/20  
DEALER NO: DA88113/20

TRA  
REGISTERED NO: ER81343/20  
DEALER NO: DA88113/20

### United States and Canada

FCC ID: LXPP004  
FCC ID: LXPP006  
IC: 2298A-P004  
IC ID: 2298A-P006

# Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

## Zambia



## CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Mid Range Radar (MRR)	Delphi/Aptiv	L2C0065TR

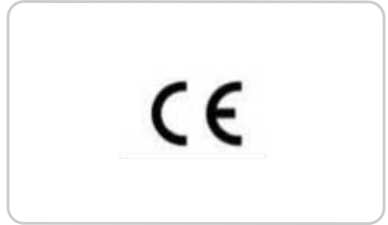
# Customer Information

---

## Argentina



## European Union EU



## Brazil



## Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: OR2-9H-7E1-x4D

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 594/dpt/2017  
Date d'agrément : 09/04/2017

## Indonesia

SERTIFIKAT NOMOR : 53104/SDPPI/2017  
PLG ID: 4927



# Customer Information

## Israel

HIDF16000009

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément: 0409/ARE/2017

Date d'agrément: 12/04/2017

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA - L2C0065TR.

## Malaysia



## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 13639 ARNT 2017

Date d'agrément: 28/03/2017



# Customer Information

---

## Pakistan



## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards  
DA105753

## Paraguay



## South Africa



## Serbia



## South Korea



R-CMM-DLH-L2C0065TR

# Customer Information

---

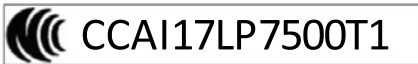
## Syria

SyTRA  
REGISTERED No:  
FR00085-17

## Ukraine



## Taiwan, China



## United Arab Emirates



# Customer Information

---

## United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

## Zambia



# Customer Information

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Intrusion Transceiver Module	Omron/Nidec	OUC26006559

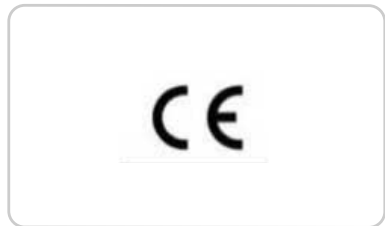
### Argentina



### Brazil



### Europe



# Customer Information

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E1-115

## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 14721 ANRT 2017  
Date d'agrément : 12/09/2017

## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-63481
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במסגרת שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי חובנה, החלפת אנטנה סקורית או חוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA - OUC26006559.

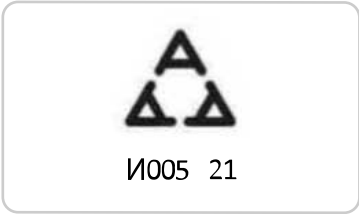
## Paraguay



NR: 2018-04-I-000175

# Customer Information

## Serbia

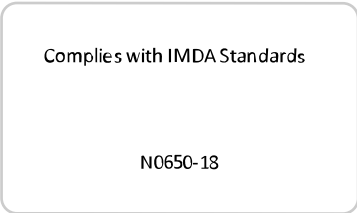


## South Korea



MSIP- R-RMM-OAC-OUC26006559

## Singapore



## Taiwan



## South Africa



## Ukraine



# Customer Information

## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

The logo for TDR (Telecommunications Development Regulatory Authority) features the letters 'TDR' in a bold, blue, sans-serif font, with a stylized orange triangle above the letter 'A'. A thin horizontal line is positioned below the text.

ER95949/21  
United Arab Emirates



## United States of America and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: OUC26006559

IC: 850K-26006559

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Zambia



# Customer Information

## PASSIVE KEY


Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Passive Key Transmitter	Continental	A3C108397

## Argentina

*(RAMATEL Isologotype)*



RAMATEL  
H-28042


 RAMATEL  
H-28042

 RAMATEL H-28042

*(RAMATEL Isotype)*




H-28042

 H-28042

*(RAMATEL Isologotype)*



RAMATEL  
H-29612


 RAMATEL  
H-29612

 RAMATEL H-29612

*(RAMATEL Isotype)*




H-29612

 H-29612

*(RAMATEL Isologotype)*



RAMATEL  
H-30147


 RAMATEL  
H-30147

 RAMATEL H-30417

*(RAMATEL Isotype)*



H-30147

 H-30147



# Customer Information

## Brazil



NR: 2022-03-I-0162

03184-23-06546

## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמת מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-85634  
2. תל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שישי בהן כדי לענות את הכוונתו האלמנטית של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אישורת לחיבור לאנטנה הישנית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בעל הוויסא לרפורמת אלמנטית.

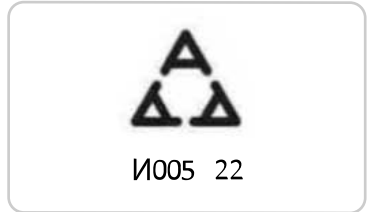
## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A3C108397

## Paraguay



## Serbia



## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

Dealer License Number:

DA 00461

## South Africa



## Taiwan



CCAB22LP1030T3

# Customer Information

## Thailand

(1) เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ได้รับการแก้ไขข้อบกพร่องที่พบโดยผู้ผลิตหรือผู้จำหน่ายแล้ว และได้รับการแก้ไขเรียบร้อยแล้ว เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ได้รับการแก้ไขเรียบร้อยแล้ว

## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



## United Kingdom



## United States and Canada

FCC ID: M3N-A3C108397

IC ID: 7812A-A3C108397

# Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Note:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

## RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Radio Transceiver Module (RTM)	Aptiv	FO2-RX433UDA

### Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation:

HER - 0151/Septembre/2022

Date d'homologation:

22/09/2022

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément:

033/DDTIC/2020

Date d'agrément:

07/06/2020

# Customer Information

## Europe Union EU



## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 31-48227
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, כלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

## Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIERS: SRO-1M-7E4-108

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 56-03001
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, כלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FO2-RX433UDA

## Malaysia

## Independent State of Samoa



HIDF16000009

# Customer Information

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément:

0803/ARE/2020

Date d'agrément:

03/06/2020

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24102 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 18/05/2020

## Mexico



IFT: RCPAPFO21-0004

## Pakistan



## Moldova



## Serbia



# Customer Information

## South Africa



## Ukraine



## Taiwan



CCAB22LP1370T1

## Thailand

## United Kingdom



เครื่องหมายการค้าและสัญลักษณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.

## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



# Customer Information

---

## Zambia



## SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4 SYNC-G4L

## Argentina



# Customer Information

---

## Brazil



08657-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção  
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar  
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção  
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar  
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019  
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019  
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

## European Union EU



## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180



# Customer Information

---

## Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L

## Malaysia

Model: SYNC-G4L  
Sertifikat Nomor: 81116/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.

HIDF16000009

## Mauritania

**AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE**  
**Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018**  
**Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019**

# Customer Information

---

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019  
07 AOUT 2019

## Moldova



## Pakistan



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019  
07 AOUT 2019

## Paraguay



2020-03-I-00192  
2020-03-I-00193

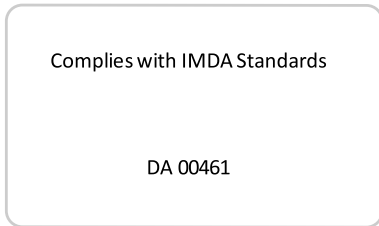
# Customer Information

---

## Serbia



## Singapore



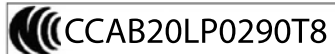
## South Korea



## South Africa



## Taiwan



# Customer Information

---

## Ukraine

 CCAB20LP0300T1



## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

 <p>ER74903/19 United Arab Emirates</p>	
--	---

 <p>ER74902/19 United Arab Emirates</p>	
---	--

# Customer Information


## United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

## Zambia



## TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FB5-TCU

# Customer Information

---

## Argentina



C-28150

## Malaysia



HIDF16000009

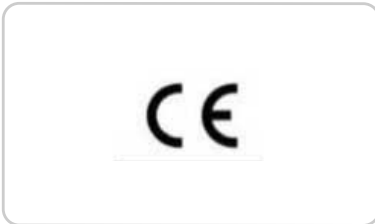
## Brazil



## Mexico



## Europe Union EU

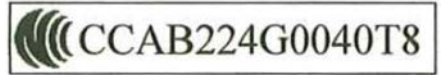


# Customer Information

## South Africa



## Taiwan



We recommend that the distance between the antenna of the telematics control unit and the user be greater than 14 in (35 cm) when using the telematics control unit.

## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



## United Kingdom



## United States and Canada

FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1  
IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

## Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

### Vietnam



### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Burnell TPM Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	BG2BP4



# Customer Information

---

## Argentina

13309-22-08001



## European Union EU



CNC ID: H-28035

## Brazil



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type BG2BP4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.schradertpms.com/en-gb/downloads>

# Customer Information

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה סטנדרט משרד התקשורת: 51-86230
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלקטרוניות.

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - BG2BP4.

## Malaysia



HIDF16000009

## Mexico

IFT: RLVSCBG22-2502

## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:  
MR00034968ANRT2022

Date d'agrément: 21/12/2022

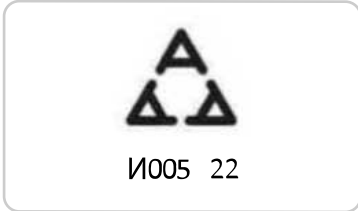
## Paraguay



# Customer Information

NR: 2022-05-I-0000331

## Serbia



## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards  
DA 00461

## South Africa



## South Korea



MSIP-R-C-SRD-BG2BP4

## Taiwan



CCAB22LP0730T0

## Thailand

- (1) เพื่อแจ้งทราบถึงสถานะและอยู่ภายใต้การดูแลของหน่วยงานของ กทช.
- (2) เพื่อรับทราบถึงขั้นตอนการดำเนินการแก้ไขข้อบกพร่องของผลิตภัณฑ์ของหน่วยงาน กทช. เพื่อให้สามารถให้บริการได้อย่างมีประสิทธิภาพ

# Customer Information

---

## Ukraine



## Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



## United Kingdom



## United States and Canada

FCC ID: MRXBG2BP4

IC: 2546A-BG2BP4

# Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	LG/BH EVS	WCFDM00N2A1 WCFDM00N2A3 WCFDM00N2A5

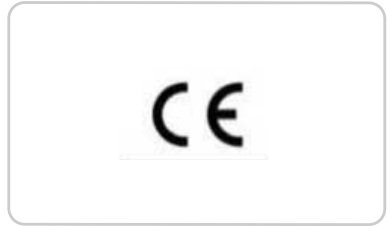
## Argentina



# Customer Information

---

## European Union



## Brazil



## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

## Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HER-062/Avril/2023

Date d'homologation: 28/4/2023

## Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



# Customer Information

Model: WCFDM00N2A3  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80015  
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Model: WCFDM00N2A5  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80013  
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80014  
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

## Malaysia



# Customer Information

HIDF16000009

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027925ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021



# Customer Information

---

## Serbia

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027923ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021



W005 21

## Paraguay



[www.conatel.gov.py](http://www.conatel.gov.py)

NR: 2021-04-I-0202

NR: 2021-04-I-0203

NR: 2021-04-I-0204

## Russia



## Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

# Customer Information

## South Africa



## South Korea



R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1

## Taiwan



**CCAB21LP050AT3**



**CCAB21LP0500T1**



**CCAB21LP050BT5**

**品名 (Product name):** 無線充電座

**型號 (Type Designation):** WCFDM00N2A1, WCFDM00N2A3, WCFDM00N2A5 **產地 (Origin):** 馬來西亞

**額定電壓 (Input rating):** 12V

**製造日期 (Approval date):** 2021.04.21



R43208  
Rolls

**申請廠商名稱 (Approval name):** 福特六和汽車股份有限公司

**申請廠商地址 (Approval address):** 桃園市中壢區中華路一段705號

# Customer Information

---

## Ukraine



## United Kingdom



## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



# Customer Information

---

**TDR**A

ER00421/21  
United Arab Emirates



IC: 2703H-WCFDMOON2A

## United States and Canada

FCC ID: BEJWCFDMOON2A

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

*Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:*

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

# Customer Information

## Vietnam



## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Zambia



## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

## PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:  
[www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

# Customer Information

---

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

## FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION REGULATION

Regulations such as those issued by the Federal Highway Administration or issued pursuant to the Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA), and state and local laws and regulations may require additional equipment for the way you intend to use your vehicle. It is the responsibility of the registered owner to determine the applicability of such laws and regulations to your intended use for the vehicle, and to arrange for the installation of required equipment. The dealer has information about the availability of equipment which can be ordered for your vehicle.

# Customer Information

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

## Customer Information

---

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.



# Customer Information

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

## **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

# Customer Information

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

## General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

## Customer Information

---

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

# Customer Information

---

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

# Customer Information

---

## **Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver**

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

## Customer Information

---

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- i. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

# Customer Information

---

## 1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**



# Customer Information

---

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## 5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY



# Customer Information

---

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

# Customer Information

---

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

## 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

## 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

## 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

# Customer Information

---

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## **9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd**

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

### **Terms and Conditions**

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

# Customer Information

---

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

# Customer Information

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as  
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to  
these End-User Terms under which this  
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

# Customer Information

---

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

# Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

# Customer Information

---

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice



## Customer Information

Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”	Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	“© EuroGeographics”	Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”	Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”	VI. Australia Territory	
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”	A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:	
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”	Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).	
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”		
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”		
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”		

# Customer Information

---

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

## **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

# Customer Information

---

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

## **VII. China Territory**

### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### ***Restrictions***

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### ***Limited Warranty***

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

# Customer Information

---

## **Customer Remedies**

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

## **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

# Customer Information

---

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

## Customer Information

---

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

### ***Taiwan Territory***

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

# Customer Information

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelomatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelomatics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

### 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

### 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelomatics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **"Suppliers"**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

# Customer Information

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## EMISSION LAW



**WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.



Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

## Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.



## Customer Information

---

- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.
- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

**Note:** *Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.*

**Note:** *If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

### Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

### EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's

Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

### WARRANTY INFORMATION

The following warranties may apply to your vehicle:

- New vehicle limited warranties.
- Emissions warranties, if applicable. (Note: Fully-electric vehicles are not eligible for emissions warranties.)
- Other warranties, if applicable.

Detailed warranty information specific to your vehicle can be found in the Warranty Guide at [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

The following California Warranty Statement, required by California regulations, applies to vehicles certified to California emissions standards and registered in a state that requires California emissions warranty. If applicable, additional California Emissions Warranties can be found in the Warranty Guide at [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

### CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT

#### YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS

The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your (year) vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designated, built and equipped to meet

# Customer Information

---

the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford Motor Company must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies. Where a warrantable condition exists, Ford Motor Company will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

## **MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY COVERAGE:**

(For 1990 and subsequent model passenger cars, light-duty trucks, and medium-duty vehicles.)

- For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first);

1) If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford Motor Company to ensure that your emission control system **PERFORMANCE WARRANTY**.

2) If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford Motor Company. This is your short-term emission control system **DEFECTS WARRANTY**.

- For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever occurs first);

1) If an emission-related part listed in this warranty booklet specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford Motor Company. This is your long-term emission control system **DEFECTS WARRANTY**.

## **OWNER'S WARRANTY RESPONSIBILITIES:**

- As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. Ford Motor Company recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Ford Motor Company cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

- You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Ford or Lincoln dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

- As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, you should contact Ford Customer Service at 1-800-392-3673 or the California Air Resource Board at 4001 Iowa Avenue, Riverside, CA 92507.

## **New Vehicle Limited Warranty**

Your vehicle comes with a New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The express warranties of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty are in substitution for and exclude all other liabilities of any kind whether arising under statute, in tort, by implication of law or otherwise including, to the full extent as may be allowed by law, liability for any other representations respecting the vehicle, statutory warranties or implied warranties or conditions as to its merchantability or fitness.

## Customer Information

---

Download a free electronic copy or order one free printed copy of the most up-to-date Warranty Guide by visiting the Owner Manuals section of [owner.ford.com](http://owner.ford.com) (United States).

For Canada, visit [ford.ca/warranty](http://ford.ca/warranty).

For Limo/Livery/Hearse vehicles: View and download your Warranty Guide by visiting the Warranty Information section of the Fleet website, [fleet.ford.com/limo](http://fleet.ford.com/limo) (United States only).

# Appendices

## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

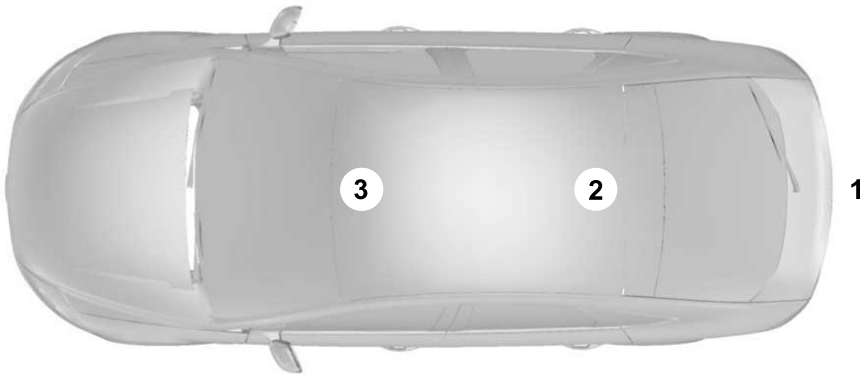


**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle, such as, cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

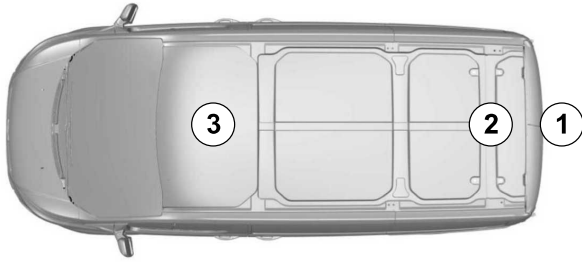
### Car



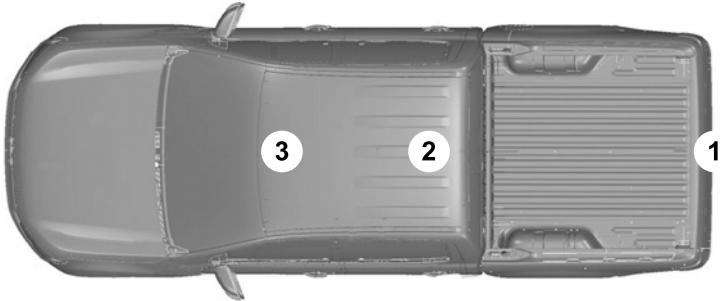
# Appendices

---

## Van



## Truck



# Appendices

---

<b>Frequency Band MHz</b>	<b>Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)</b>	<b>Antenna Positions</b>
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

# Index

## 1

12V Battery.....	354
12V Battery Precautions.....	354
Battery Management System	
Limitations.....	355
Changing the 12V Battery.....	355
How Does the Battery Management	
System Work.....	355
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V	
Battery.....	357
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	357
What Is the Battery Management	
System.....	355

## 3

360 Degree Camera.....	213
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	214
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	214
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	213
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	214
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and	
Off.....	214
Switching the 360 Degree Camera	
View.....	215

## 9

911 Assist.....	60
-----------------	----

## A

### A/C

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual	
Automatic Temperature Control	
(DATC).....	110
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:	
Electronic Automatic Temperature Control	
(EATC).....	114
About This Publication.....	17
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	178
Accessing Navigation.....	438
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position - Vehicles With: Push Button	
Start.....	146
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	108

Accessories.....	444
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	218
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	230
Lane Centering.....	224
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	227
Predictive Speed Assist.....	228
Predictive Speed Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	230
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation.....	221
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	224
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Limitations.....	219
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Precautions.....	218
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	230
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information	
Messages.....	230
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	98
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	357
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting	
Brightness.....	92
Adjusting the Integrated Trailer Brake	
Controller Mode.....	284
Adjusting the Map.....	438
Changing the Format of the Map.....	438
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	438
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	46
Adjusting the Seatbelts During	
Pregnancy.....	46
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	415
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	80
Adjusting the Volume.....	414
Aid Mode.....	238
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	238
What Is Aid Mode.....	238
Airbag Precautions.....	53
Airbags.....	51
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	55
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual	
Automatic Temperature Control	
(DATC).....	110
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:	
Electronic Automatic Temperature Control	
(EATC).....	114

# Index

Air Conditioning System	
Refrigerant.....	113
Alert and Aid Mode.....	238
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	239
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	238
Alert Mode.....	238
How Does Alert Mode Work.....	238
What Is Alert Mode.....	238
Alexa Built-In.....	429
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	429
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	429
All-Wheel Drive.....	175
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	177
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	176
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	176
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	177
All-Wheel Drive – Information	
Messages.....	177
AM/FM Radio.....	415
AM/FM Radio Limitations.....	415
Selecting a Radio Station.....	416
Ambient Lighting.....	93
Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	93
Switching Ambient Lighting On and	
Off.....	93
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	178
Anti-Lock Braking System Indicators.....	178
Anti-Lock Braking System	
Limitations.....	178
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	77
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	77
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm	
System.....	77
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System	
Work.....	77
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	77
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	77
Appendices.....	540
Applying the Electric Parking	
Brake.....	182
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an	
Emergency.....	182
Audio System.....	414
AM/FM Radio.....	415
Audio System – Troubleshooting.....	420
Digital Radio.....	416
Satellite Radio.....	417
Audio System Precautions.....	414
Audio System – Troubleshooting.....	420
Audio System – Information	
Messages.....	420
Auto Hold.....	190
Auto Hold Indicators.....	190
Autolamps.....	86
Autolamp Settings.....	86
What Are Autolamps.....	86
Autolock.....	69
Autolock Requirements.....	69
What Is Autolock.....	69
Automatically Releasing the Electric	
Parking Brake.....	183
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	321
Automatic Crash Shutoff	
Precautions.....	321
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	321
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	321
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	258
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking	
On and Off.....	258
What Is Automatic Emergency	
Braking.....	258
Automatic Engine Stop – Vehicles With:	
Push Button Start.....	145
How Does Automatic Engine Stop	
Work.....	145
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	146
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and	
Off.....	146
What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	145
Automatic High Beam Control.....	89
Automatic High Beam Control	
Indicators.....	90
Automatic High Beam Control	
Limitations.....	90
Automatic High Beam Control	
Precautions.....	89
Automatic High Beam Control	
Requirements.....	90
How Does Automatic High Beam Control	
Work.....	89
Overriding Automatic High Beam	
Control.....	90
Switching Automatic High Beam Control	
On and Off.....	90



# Index

Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	91
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	91
Automatic Locking Mode.....	45
Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	45
Engaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	45
What Is Automatic Locking Mode.....	45
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	171
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings.....	173
Automatic Transmission.....	168
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	168
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	173
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	174
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	168
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators.....	170
Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	168
Drive (D).....	169
Low (L).....	169
Manual (M).....	169
Neutral (N).....	169
Park (P).....	169
Reverse (R).....	169
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	168
Auto Mode.....	111
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	111
Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	111
Auto-Start-Stop.....	153
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	154
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	153
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	153
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	154
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	155
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	154
Autounlock.....	69
Autounlock Requirements.....	69
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	69
What Is Autounlock.....	69
AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	175

## B

Blind Spot Assist.....	240
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	240
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	240
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	240
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	240
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....	242
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	241
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....	241
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	240
Blind Spot Information System.....	245
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	248
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	246
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	248
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	245
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	245
Blind Spot Information System Requirements.....	245
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	248
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	248
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	246
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	246
Selecting a Trailer.....	247
Setting a Trailer Length.....	247
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	246
Bluetooth®.....	437
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	335
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	335
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	335

# Index

Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	335
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	338
Booster Seats.....	40
Brake Coach - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	107
Brake Fluid Specification.....	179
Brake Over Accelerator.....	178
Brake Precautions.....	178
Brakes.....	178
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	178
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	180
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	180
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	181
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	180
Breaking-In.....	310
<b>C</b>	
Calculating Payload.....	268
Calculating the Load Limit.....	268
Canceling the Set Speed.....	198
Catalytic Converter.....	166
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	166
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	166
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	166
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	166
Center Console.....	137
Opening the Center Console.....	137
Center Display.....	424
Center Display Overview.....	424
Changing a Flat Tire.....	399
Changing a Road Wheel.....	399
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Flip Key.....	64
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	65
Charging a Device.....	130
Charging a Wireless Device.....	135
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	178
Checking the Seatbelts.....	48
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	387
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	81
Children and Airbags.....	54
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	33
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	33
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	34
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	33
Child Restraints.....	34
Child Restraint Position Information.....	34
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	35
Child Safety.....	32
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	33
Child Restraints.....	34
Installing Child Restraints.....	35
Child Safety Locks.....	42
Child Safety Precautions.....	32
Cleaning Products.....	368
Cleaning the Exterior.....	369
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	370
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	369
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	369
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	370
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	370
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	369
Cleaning the Underbody.....	370
Cleaning Wheels.....	369
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	369
Cleaning the Interior.....	371
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	372
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	371
Cleaning Fabric.....	371
Cleaning Glass Roof Tracks.....	373
Cleaning Leather.....	371
Cleaning Plastic.....	371
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	372
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	372
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	371
Cleaning Vinyl.....	372
Climate Control.....	110
Auto Mode.....	111
Climate Control Hints.....	112
Connected Navigation.....	438

# Index

Connected Vehicle.....	409	Cross Traffic Alert.....	250
Connected Vehicle –		Cross Traffic Alert –	
Troubleshooting.....	410	Troubleshooting.....	253
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile		Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	252
Network.....	409	Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	251
Connected Vehicle Data.....	27	Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	250
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	409	Cross Traffic Alert –	
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	409	Troubleshooting.....	253
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	410	Cross Traffic Alert – Information	
Connected Vehicle –		Messages.....	253
Troubleshooting.....	410	Cruise Control.....	216
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked		Cruise Control Indicators.....	217
Questions.....	410	Cup Holders.....	137
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	437	Cup Holder Precautions.....	137
Connecting a Trailer.....	274	Customer Information.....	454
Connecting a Trailer –		Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	457
Troubleshooting.....	276	Customizing the Instrument Cluster	
Connecting a Trailer Precautions.....	274	Display.....	106
Connecting a Trailer –			
Troubleshooting.....	276	<b>D</b>	
Connecting a Trailer – Information		Data Privacy.....	25
Messages.....	276	Department of Transportation Uniform	
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile		Tire Quality Grades.....	376
Network.....	409	Digital Radio.....	416
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	409	Digital Radio Indicators.....	417
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	409	Digital Radio Limitations.....	417
What Is the Modem.....	409	How Does Digital Radio Work.....	416
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi		Switching Digital Radio Reception On and	
Network.....	409	Off.....	417
Connecting Your Phone.....	431	What Is Digital Radio.....	416
Contacting Us.....	15	Dinghy Tow	
Coolant.....	349	See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle –	
Adding Coolant.....	349	AWD.....	325
Changing the Coolant.....	350	See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle –	
Checking the Coolant Level.....	349	FWD.....	325
Coolant – Information Messages.....	353	Directing the Flow of Air.....	111
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	353	Disposing of Airbags.....	59
Cooling System Capacity and		Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	69
Specification.....	351	How Does the Door Lock Switch Inhibitor	
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	351	Work.....	69
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	314	Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	70
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	321	Doors and Locks.....	68
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	323	Autolock.....	69
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	316	Autounlock.....	69
Post-Crash Alert System.....	320	Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	69
Post Impact Braking.....	320	Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	70
Recovery Towing.....	321	Mislock.....	69
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	58		

# Index

Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	68
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	68
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	70
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions.....	71
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	70
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	70
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	354
Drive Mode Control.....	232
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	234
Drive Modes.....	232
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	234
Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions.....	235
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages.....	234
Drive Mode Control – Warning Lamps.....	234
Drive Modes.....	232
Eco.....	232
Lobo.....	233
Normal.....	233
Off-Road.....	233
Slippery.....	233
Sport.....	234
Tow/Haul.....	234
Driver Alert.....	264
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	265
Driver Alert Indicators.....	265
Driver Alert Limitations.....	264
Driver Alert Precautions.....	264
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	265
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	265
Driver Assistance Menu.....	426
Driving Economically.....	310
Driving Hints.....	310
Driving in Cold Weather.....	310
Driving In Sand.....	311
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	311
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	311
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	312
Drowsiness Monitor See: Driver Alert.....	264
<b>E</b>	
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	183
Electric Parking Brake.....	182
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	183
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	183
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	184
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	183
Electric Power Steering.....	204
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	204
How Does Electric Power Steering Work.....	204
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	540
Emergency Call Limitations.....	61
Emergency Call Requirements.....	60
Emergency Call System Data.....	28
Emergency Towing.....	326
Emission Law.....	536
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device.....	435
End User License Agreement.....	511
Engine Air Filter.....	346
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	346
Engine Block Heater.....	143
Engine Block Heater Precautions.....	143
How Does the Engine Block Heater Work.....	144
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	144
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	104
Engine Oil.....	342
Adding Engine Oil.....	342
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	342
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification.....	343
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	342
Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	343
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	343
Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	364

# Index

Engine Specifications - 2.5L, Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	365
Environment.....	29
Evasive Steering Assist.....	258
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	259
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	259
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	258
EV Coach - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	106
Event Data.....	26
Export Unique Options.....	537
Exterior Bulbs.....	359
Changing a Front Side Marker Lamp Bulb.....	360
Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	360
Changing a High Mounted Stoplamp Bulb.....	363
Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb.....	361
Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	362
Changing a Reversing Lamp Bulb.....	362
Changing a Stoplamp Bulb.....	361
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	359
Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly.....	359
Exterior Lamps.....	87
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	88
Switching the Cargo Lamps On.....	88
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	87
Using the Front Fog Lamps.....	88
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	87
Exterior Lighting Control.....	85
Exterior Lighting.....	85
Autolamps.....	86
Automatic High Beam Control.....	89
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	91
Exterior Lamps.....	87
Headlamps.....	85
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	86
Exterior Mirrors.....	98
Exterior Overview.....	31
<b>F</b>	
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	323
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated.....	324
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	324
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	323
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	323
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	44
Federal Highway Administration Regulation.....	510
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	399
Flat Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD.....	325
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD.....	325
Floor Mats.....	312
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	99
Ford Assistant.....	427
Ford Assistant – Frequently Asked Questions.....	427
Ford Assistant Settings.....	427
Using Ford Assistant.....	427
Ford Protect.....	445
Forward Collision Warning.....	258
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	258
What is Forward Collision Warning.....	258
Four Wheels Down Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD.....	325
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD.....	325
Front Parking Aid.....	207
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	208
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	208
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	208
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	207
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	55
Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators.....	57
Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions.....	57

# Index

How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work.....	55
What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System.....	55
Front Seat Precautions.....	118
Front Seats.....	118
Heated Seats.....	123
Manual Seats.....	119
Power Seats.....	121
Fuel and Refueling.....	156
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	163
Fuel Quality.....	156
Refueling.....	159
Running Out of Fuel.....	157
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	156
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	163
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	164
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	163
Fuel Economy Display - Gasoline.....	106
Fuel Economy Display - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	106
Fuel Gauge.....	104
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	104
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	104
What Is Distance to Empty.....	104
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	104
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	104
Fuel Quality.....	156
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	156
Fuel Tank Capacity - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	163
Fuel Tank Capacity - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	162
Fuse Precautions.....	329
Fuses.....	329
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	335
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	337
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	329
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	337
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	337
<b>G</b>	
General Maintenance Information.....	449
Glasses Holder.....	138
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	138
Glass Roof Bounce-Back.....	101
Overriding Glass Roof Bounce-Back.....	101
What Is Glass Roof Bounce-Back.....	101
Glass Roof.....	100
Glass Roof Bounce-Back.....	101
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	382
Glove Compartment.....	137
Opening the Glove Compartment.....	137
Grade Assist - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	172
<b>H</b>	
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	357
Headlamps.....	85
Headlamp Indicators.....	85
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	85
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	85
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	86
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	86
Heated Seats.....	123
Heated Seat Precautions.....	123
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	123
Heating	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	110
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC).....	114
High Voltage Battery.....	167
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	167
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	167
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	167
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps.....	167
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions.....	315

# Index

Hill Descent Control.....	202	How Does the Personal Safety System Work.....	50
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....	203	How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	127
Hill Descent Control Indicator.....	202	How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work.....	52
Hill Descent Control Precautions.....	202	How Does Traction Control Work.....	192
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....	203	How Does Trailer Backup Assistance Work.....	291
Hill Descent Control – Information Messages.....	203	How Does Trailer Hitching Assistance Work.....	288
Hill Start Assist.....	189	How Does Trailer Reverse Guidance Work.....	301
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	189	How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	287
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	189	How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	51
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	189	How Do the Knee Airbags Work.....	52
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	189	How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	51
Home Screen.....	424	Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	151
Hood Lock			
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	338		
Horn.....	80		
How Does 911 Assist Work.....	60		
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	218		
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work - Excluding: FX4 Off Road/Tremor.....	175		
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work - FX4 Off Road/Tremor.....	175		
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	190		
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	245		
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	250		
How Does Drive Mode Control Work.....	232		
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	264		
How Does Hill Descent Control Work.....	202		
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	189		
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	254		
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	185		
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work.....	261		
How Does Stability Control Work.....	194		
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	213		
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	236		
		Icon Glossary	19
		See: Symbols Glossary.....	19
		Icons	
		See: Symbols Glossary.....	19
		Identifying Fuse Types.....	337
		Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	110
		Ignition Switch - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	140
		Inflating the Tires.....	387
		Information On Demand Screen.....	426
		Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	377
		Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	389
		Inspecting the Tire for Wear.....	388
		Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems.....	393
		Installing Child Restraints.....	35
		Combining the Seatbelt and Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Restraints.....	39
		Installing a Child Restraint in a Center Seat.....	38
		Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children.....	37
		Using Seatbelts.....	35
		Using Tether Straps.....	39
		Instrument Cluster Display.....	105

# Index

Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu.....	105
Instrument Cluster.....	102
Fuel Gauge.....	104
Instrument Cluster Overview - Gasoline.....	102
Instrument Cluster Overview - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	102
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	282
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting.....	285
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Precautions.....	282
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting.....	285
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Frequently Asked Questions.....	286
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Information Messages.....	285
Interior Air Quality.....	117
Interior Bulbs.....	363
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	363
Interior Lamp Function.....	92
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	92
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	92
Interior Lighting.....	92
Ambient Lighting.....	93
Interior Lamp Function.....	92
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	93
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	93
Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	93
Interior Mirror.....	97
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	97
Interior Overview.....	30
Introduction.....	17

## J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	316
Jump Starting Precautions.....	316
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	317
Preparing the Vehicle.....	317

## K

Keyless Entry.....	72
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	73
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	72
Keyless Entry Settings.....	72
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	73
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	73
Keys and Remote Controls.....	62
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	67
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	67
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	67

## L

Lane Centering.....	224
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	224
Lane Centering Alerts.....	226
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	226
Lane Centering Indicators.....	227
Lane Centering Limitations.....	225
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	227
Lane Centering Precautions.....	225
Lane Centering Requirements.....	225
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	226
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	227
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	227
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	239
Lane Keeping System.....	236
Aid Mode.....	238
Alert and Aid Mode.....	238
Alert Mode.....	238
Blind Spot Assist.....	240
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	240
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	243
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	236
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	236
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	238



# Index

Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	243	Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror.....	97
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	244	Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	182
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	243	Manually Shifting Gears.....	170
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	279	Manual Seats.....	119
Live Traffic.....	438	Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	119
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	438	Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	120
What Is Live Traffic.....	438	Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	125
Load Carrying.....	266	Adjusting the Seat Height.....	121
Load Carrying Precautions.....	266	Folding the Seat Backrest.....	125
Loading Your Trailer.....	278	Head Restraint Components.....	119
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	213	Installing the Head Restraint.....	120
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	246	Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	120
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	178	Removing the Head Restraint.....	120
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	252	Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	126
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	157	Media Control Buttons.....	414
Locating the Power Outlets.....	132	Mislock.....	69
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors.....	257	Mislock Limitations.....	70
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	211	Switching Mislock On and Off.....	70
Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels.....	267	What Is Mislock.....	69
Locating the Tire label.....	376	Mobile Communications Equipment.....	510
Locating the USB Ports.....	130	Mobile Device Data.....	28
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	135	Moonroof See: Glass Roof.....	100
Locating Your Vehicle.....	63	Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	366
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate.....	75	Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	366
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	95	Muting the Audio.....	415
<b>M</b>		<b>N</b>	
Maintenance.....	338	Navigation Map Updates.....	438
12V Battery.....	354	Navigation.....	438
Coolant.....	349	Adjusting the Map.....	438
Engine Air Filter.....	346	Live Traffic.....	438
Engine Oil.....	342	Route Guidance.....	439
Exterior Bulbs.....	359	Setting a Destination.....	438
Interior Bulbs.....	363	Waypoints.....	439
Maintenance Precautions.....	338	Neutral Towing See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD.....	325
Maintenance Videos.....	363	See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD.....	325
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	433		

# Index

Neutral Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD.....	325
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD.....	325

## O

Opening and Closing the Flip Key.....	63
Opening and Closing the Glass	
Roof.....	100
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	338
Opening and Closing the Sliding Windows.....	95
Opening and Closing the Sunshade.....	100
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	94
Opening the Tailgate.....	74
Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	74
Opening the Tailgate to the Middle Position.....	74
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	68
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	69
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	68
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	68
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	68
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	68
OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	441
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	441
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	186
Overriding the Set Speed.....	224
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	441
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	441
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	441
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	441

## P

Panorama Roof	
See: Glass Roof.....	100
Panoramic Roof	
See: Glass Roof.....	100
Parking Aid Indicators.....	209
Parking Aid Precautions.....	206
Parking Aids.....	206
Front Parking Aid.....	207
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	210
Rear Parking Aid.....	207
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	210
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	210
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	77
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....	77
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	77
Perchlorate.....	509
Performing a System Reset.....	443
Personal Safety System	
Components.....	50
Personal Safety System™.....	50
Phone Menu.....	431
Phone.....	431
Phone Precautions.....	431
Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	271
Locating the Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	271
Pickup Bed Anchor Point Load Capacities.....	272
Pickup Bed Anchor Point Precautions.....	271
Pickup Bed.....	271
Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	271
Pickup Bed Slots.....	273
Tailgate Anchor Points.....	272
Pickup Bed Precautions.....	271
Pickup Bed Slots.....	273
Locating the Pickup Bed Slots.....	273
Pickup Bed Storage.....	138
Locating the Pickup Bed Storage.....	138
Opening the Pickup Bed Storage.....	139
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	437
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	130
Post-Crash Alert System.....	320
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	320

# Index

Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	320
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System	
Off.....	320
What Is the Post-Crash Alert	
System.....	320
Post Impact Braking.....	320
How Does Post Impact Braking	
Work.....	320
Overriding Post Impact Braking.....	321
Post Impact Braking Indicators.....	321
Post Impact Braking Limitations.....	320
Power Gauge - Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
(HEV).....	104
Power Outlet Indicators.....	132
Power Outlet Limitations.....	132
Power Outlet.....	132
Power Outlet Precautions.....	132
Power Seats.....	121
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	121
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	122
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	122
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	122
Head Restraint Components.....	121
Installing the Head Restraint.....	122
Moving the Seat Backward and	
Forward.....	122
Removing the Head Restraint.....	122
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	441
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	441
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	255
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	254
Pre-Collision Assist.....	254
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	258
Evasive Steering Assist.....	258
Forward Collision Warning.....	258
Pre-Collision Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	259
Pre-Collision Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	259
Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	260
Pre-Collision Assist – Information	
Messages.....	259
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning	
Lamps.....	259
Predictive Speed Assist.....	228
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance.....	229
How Does Predictive Speed Assist	
Work.....	228
Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	229
Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	229
Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	229
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	228
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode	
On and Off.....	229
Predictive Speed Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	230
Predictive Speed Assist – Information	
Messages.....	230
Preparing Your Vehicle for	
Storage.....	374
Programming the Remote Control.....	67
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front	
Passenger Seats.....	54
Protecting the Environment.....	29
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	399
Push Button Ignition Switch - Vehicles	
With: Push Button Start.....	141
<b>R</b>	
Radio Frequency Certification	
Labels.....	457
Blind Spot Information System	
Sensors.....	457
Body Control Module.....	465
Cruise Control Module.....	470
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	476
Passive Key.....	480
Radio Transceiver Module.....	483
SYNC.....	487
Telematics Control Unit.....	493
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Sensors.....	496
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....	501
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible	
Warnings.....	129
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Indicators.....	128
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Limitations.....	127
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Precautions.....	127
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	127

# Index

Rear Occupant Alert System	
Settings.....	128
Rear Parking Aid.....	207
Locating the Rear Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	207
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	207
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	207
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	207
Rear Seats.....	124
Manual Seats.....	124
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	211
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	211
Rear View Camera.....	211
Rear View Camera Settings.....	212
Rear View Camera Settings.....	212
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and	
Off.....	212
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and	
Out.....	212
Rebooting the Center Display.....	426
Recovery Towing.....	321
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	321
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle -	
AWD.....	325
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle -	
FWD.....	325
Recycling and Disposing of the High	
Voltage Battery.....	167
Refueling.....	159
Refueling System Overview.....	159
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	159
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if	
the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of	
Charge.....	183
Remote Control Limitations.....	62
Remote Start.....	109
Remote Start Settings.....	109
Removing and Installing the	
Tailgate.....	75
Removing the Key Blade.....	63
Removing Your Vehicle From	
Storage.....	375
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	373
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	509
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Control.....	66
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	117
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	81
Reporting Safety Defects in	
Canada.....	456
Reporting Safety Defects in the United	
States.....	455
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	108
Restarting the Engine.....	153
Resuming the Set Speed.....	217
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	186
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	185
Reverse Brake Assist.....	185
Reverse Brake Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	187
Reverse Brake Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	187
Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	188
Reverse Brake Assist – Information	
Messages.....	187
Roadside Assistance.....	314
Rollover Warning.....	454
Route Guidance.....	439
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt	
Volume.....	439
Canceling Route Guidance.....	440
Repeating an Instruction.....	439
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	310
Running Out of Fuel.....	157
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel	
Container.....	158
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	157
<b>S</b>	
Satellite Radio.....	417
Locating the Satellite Radio Identification	
Number.....	418
Satellite Radio Limitations.....	418
Satellite Radio Settings.....	418
Selecting a Channel.....	418
Setting an Alert.....	419
What Is Satellite Radio.....	417
Scheduled Maintenance.....	447
Seatbelt Extensions.....	49
Seatbelt Precautions.....	43

# Index

Seatbelt Reminder.....	47	Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	110
How Does the Seatbelt Reminder		Setting the Clock and Date.....	415
Work.....	47	Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	216
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	48	Setting the Hill Descent Speed.....	202
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	47	Setting the Temperature.....	111
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and		Setting the Trail Control Speed.....	198
Off.....	48	Setting Up a Vehicle Hotspot.....	412
Seatbelts.....	43	Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance	
Automatic Locking Mode.....	45	for a Conventional Trailer.....	291
Seatbelt Reminder.....	47	Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid	
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	45	Sticker.....	293
Security.....	77	Calibrating the System.....	293
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	77	Configuring the Trailer.....	291
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	77	Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for	
Security – Troubleshooting.....	78	a Conventional Trailer.....	301
Security – Troubleshooting.....	78	Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid	
Security – Frequently Asked		Sticker.....	302
Questions.....	79	Calibrating the System.....	303
Security – Information Messages.....	78	Configuring the Trailer.....	301
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	232	Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of	
Selecting the Audio Source.....	414	Park (P).....	172
Sending and Receiving a Text		Signing In to Your Account.....	429
Message.....	434	Sitting in the Correct Position.....	118
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	45	Software Update Indicators.....	442
How Does Sensitive Locking Mode		Software Update Settings.....	441
Work.....	45	Software Update	
What is Sensitive Locking Mode.....	45	See: Software Update Settings.....	441
Service Data.....	26	See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	441
Setting a Destination.....	438	Sounding the Panic Alarm.....	63
Setting a Destination Using a Point of		Speed Control	
Interest.....	439	See: Cruise Control.....	216
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive		Speedometer.....	104
Destination.....	439	Speed Sign Recognition Indicators.....	262
Setting a Destination Using a Recent		Speed Sign Recognition	
Destination.....	439	Limitations.....	261
Setting a Destination Using a Saved		Speed Sign Recognition	
Destination.....	439	Precautions.....	261
Setting a Destination Using the Map		Speed Sign Recognition Settings.....	262
Screen.....	439	Speed Sign Recognition.....	261
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry		Speed Sign Recognition –	
Screen.....	438	Troubleshooting.....	262
Setting a Memory Preset.....	415	Speed Sign Recognition –	
Settings Data.....	27	Troubleshooting.....	262
Settings.....	426	Speed Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Questions.....	263
Gap.....	222	Speed Sign Recognition – Information	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Messages.....	262
Speed.....	221	Stability Control Indicator.....	196

# Index

Stability Control.....	194	Glasses Holder.....	138
Stability Control – Troubleshooting.....	197	Glove Compartment.....	137
Stability Control –		Pickup Bed Storage.....	138
Troubleshooting.....	197	Under Seat Storage.....	138
Stability Control – Warning Lamps.....	197	Storing Your Vehicle.....	374
Starter Switch		Sunroof	
See: Ignition Switch - Vehicles Without: Push		See: Glass Roof.....	100
Button Start.....	140	Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On	
Starting and Stopping the Engine –		and Off.....	220
Precautions.....	140	Switching Air Conditioning On and	
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	140	Off.....	110
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With:		Switching All of the Interior Lamps On	
Push Button Start.....	145	and Off.....	92
Engine Block Heater.....	143	Switching Android Auto™ On and	
Starting and Stopping the Engine –		Off.....	436
Troubleshooting.....	147	Switching Apple CarPlay On and	
Starting the Engine.....	141	Off.....	435
Stopping the Engine.....	144	Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	190
Starting and Stopping the Engine –		Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and	
Troubleshooting.....	147	Off.....	153
Starting and Stopping the Engine –		Switching Blind Spot Information	
Frequently Asked Questions.....	148	System On and Off.....	245
Starting and Stopping the Engine –		Switching Climate Control On and	
Information Messages.....	147	Off.....	110
Starting and Stopping the Engine –		Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and	
Warning Lamps.....	147	Off.....	252
Starting the Engine.....	141	Switching Cruise Control On and	
Restarting the Engine After Stopping		Off.....	216
It.....	142	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	265
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	141	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control	
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle		to Cruise Control.....	224
System.....	142	Switching Hill Descent Control On and	
Status Bar.....	424	Off.....	202
Steering.....	204	Switching Maximum Cooling On and	
Electric Power Steering.....	204	Off.....	110
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	205	Switching Maximum Defrost On and	
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	205	Off.....	110
Steering – Information Messages.....	205	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	206
Steering – Warning Lamps.....	205	Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and	
Steering Wheel.....	80	Off.....	257
Stopping the Engine.....	153	Switching Recirculated Air On and	
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is		Off.....	110
Moving.....	144	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and	
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is		Off.....	186
Stationary.....	144	Switching Stability Control On and	
Storage.....	137	Off.....	195
Center Console.....	137	Switching Text Message Notification On	
Cup Holders.....	137	and Off.....	435

# Index

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	414
Switching the Display On and Off.....	416
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	92
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	316
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	111
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	80
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	237
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	237
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	92
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	192
Switching Trail Control On and Off.....	198
Switching Trailer Backup Assistance On and Off.....	294
Switching Trailer Hitching Assistance On and Off.....	289
Switching Trailer Reverse Guidance On and Off.....	304
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off.....	287
Symbols Glossary.....	19
Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster.....	21
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle.....	19
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	441
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	441
<b>T</b>	
Tachometer - Gasoline.....	103
Tailgate Anchor Points.....	272
Locating the Tailgate Anchor Points.....	272
Tailgate Anchor Point Load Capacities.....	272
Tailgate Precautions.....	74
Tailgate.....	74
Opening the Tailgate.....	74
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	171
The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program.....	454
The Mediation and Arbitration Program.....	455
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	457
Tire Care.....	387
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	396
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview.....	395
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	396
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	395
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	397
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	397
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	398
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	397
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	383
Tire Rotation.....	393
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	278
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	277
Towing a Trailer.....	277
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	280
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	280
Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle.....	281
Recommended Towing Weights.....	280
What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight.....	281
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions - FWD.....	325
Towing Your Vehicle.....	325
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	327
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	327
Towing Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	327
Traction Control.....	192
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	192

# Index

Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	192
Traction Control – Information Messages.....	193
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	192
Trail Control Indicators.....	199
Trail Control Limitations.....	198
Trail Control.....	198
Trail Control – Troubleshooting.....	201
Trail One Pedal Drive.....	199
Trail One Pedal Drive – Troubleshooting.....	200
Trail Control – Troubleshooting.....	201
Trail Control – Information Messages.....	201
Trailer Backup Assistance Precautions.....	291
Trailer Backup Assistance Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for a Conventional Trailer.....	291
Trailer Backup Assistance – Troubleshooting.....	297
Trailer Backup Assistance – Troubleshooting.....	297
Trailer Backup Assistance – Frequently Asked Questions.....	299
Trailer Backup Assistance – Information Messages.....	297
Trailer Brake Precautions.....	277
Trailer Hitching Assistance Indicators.....	290
Trailer Hitching Assistance Limitations.....	289
Trailer Hitching Assistance Precautions.....	288
Trailer Hitching Assistance Troubleshooting.....	288
Trailer Reverse Guidance Precautions.....	301
Trailer Reverse Guidance Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a Conventional Trailer.....	301
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Troubleshooting.....	306
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Troubleshooting.....	306
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Frequently Asked Questions.....	308
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Information Messages.....	306
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	287
Trailer Sway Control.....	287
Trailer Towing Hints.....	278
Trail One Pedal Drive.....	199
Switching Trail One Pedal Drive On and Off.....	199
Trail One Pedal Drive Indicators.....	200
Trail One Pedal Drive Limitations.....	199
Trail One Pedal Drive Precautions.....	199
What Is Trail One Pedal Drive.....	199
Trail One Pedal Drive – Troubleshooting.....	200
Trail One Pedal Drive – Information Messages.....	200
Transporting the Vehicle.....	323
Trip Computer.....	108
Trip Summary - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	107

## U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	329
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	329
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	330
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	329
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	340
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	341
Under Seat Storage.....	138
Locating the Under Seat Storage Compartment.....	138
USB Ports.....	130
Using Alexa Built-In.....	429
Using a Slide-In Camper.....	267
Using Auto Hold.....	190
Using Keyless Entry.....	72
Using Remote Start.....	109
Using Snow Chains.....	385
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....	105
Using the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	282
Using the Remote Control.....	62



# Index

Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Controller.....	294
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Views.....	295
Using This Publication.....	18
Using Trailer Hitching Assistance.....	289
Using Trailer Reverse Guidance Views.....	304
<b>V</b>	
Vehicle Care.....	368
Cleaning the Exterior.....	369
Cleaning the Interior.....	371
Vehicle Hotspot Settings.....	412
Vehicle Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	413
Vehicle Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....	413
Vehicle Hotspot.....	412
Vehicle Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	413
Vehicle Identification Number.....	408
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	408
Vehicle Identification Number Overview.....	408
Vehicle Identification.....	408
Vehicle Identification Number.....	408
Vehicle Software Updates.....	441
Vehicle Specifications.....	364
Vehicle System Reset.....	443
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	110
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC).....	114
Venting the Glass Roof.....	101
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	397
Visual Search.....	30
Voice Interaction.....	427
Ford Assistant.....	427
<b>W</b>	
Warranty Information.....	537
Washers.....	82
Adding Washer Fluid.....	83
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	83
Using the Windshield Washer.....	82
Washer Fluid Specification.....	83
Washer Precautions.....	82
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	81
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	373
Waypoints.....	439
Adding a Waypoint.....	439
Editing Waypoints.....	439
What Is 911 Assist.....	60
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	409
What Is Alexa Built-In.....	429
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	153
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	245
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	250
What Is Cruise Control.....	216
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	232
What Is Driver Alert.....	264
What Is Ford Protect.....	445
What Is Hill Descent Control.....	202
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	189
What Is Keyless Entry.....	72
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	254
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	185
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	261
What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....	213
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	117
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	166
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	182
What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating.....	267
What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating.....	267
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.....	267
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	167
What Is the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	282
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	236
What Is the Personal Safety System.....	50
What Is the Power Outlet.....	132

# Index

---

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	127
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	211
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	395
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	135
What Is Traction Control.....	192
What Is Trail Control.....	198
What is Trailer Backup Assistance.....	291
What Is Trailer Hitching Assistance.....	288
What Is Trailer Reverse Guidance.....	301
Wheel and Tire Information.....	376
Wheel Nuts.....	407
Wi Fi	
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	409
Window Bounce-Back.....	94
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	95
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	94
Windows.....	94
Window Bounce-Back.....	94
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	84
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	84
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	84
Wipers and Washers Videos.....	84
Wipers and Washers.....	81
Washers.....	82
Wipers.....	81
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	84
Wipers.....	81
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	81
Wiper Precautions.....	81
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	135
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	135



